APPLICATIONS OF QUATERNIONS
TO FIELD EQUATIONS

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The author would like to express his sincere gratitude to Prof. H. Jones for continuous advice and encouragement throughout the preparation of this work.

He wishes to thank Dr. P. Weiss and Dr. C.W. Kilmister for stimulating discussions and for bringing to his notice several papers on quaternions. His thanks are also due to his friends Ann Gould and Carol Espinosa for their invaluable assistance in the preparation of the final copies.

Finally he is indebted to the Turkish Ministry of Education for the award of a scholarship.

CONTENTS

Abstract of the thesis		p. 1
General Introduction and Summary		p. 3
Chapter I.	Quaternion introduction	p. 14
1.	Complex quaternions: notations and matrix representations	p. 14
2.	Connection with Dirac's matrices	p. 22
3.	Canonical forms for quaternions	p. 28
4.	Representation of time-like and space-like 4-vectors. Orthogonal transformations	p. 31
Chapter II.	Quaternion formulation of Dirac's equation	p. 36
5.	Dirac's equation in Watson's quaternion form	p. 36
6.	Gauge and pseudo-gauge invariance. Charge conjugation.	p. 42
7.	Comparison with other quaternion forms	p. 46
8.	Two-Component wave equations as degenerate cases of the general equation.	p. 52

9. Introduction of an orthogonal frame of reference. The de Broglie vectors p. 57

Chapter III. New divergence equations and algebraic identities between tensors attached to a particle of spin ½. p. 62

10. Divergence equations satisfied by the basis vectors of the orthogonal frame p. 62

11. The same equations in a general field p. 65

12. Algebraic identities p. 70

13. Equations satisfied by the de Broglie vectors in the case of a free particle p. 74

14. A form of Dirac's equation involving a constant space-like vector. A new equation for a particle of rest mass 0 and spin ½. Application to the plane wave solutions of Maxwell's equations p. 77

Chapter IV. Some simple quaternion solutions p. 84

15. Second order equations p. 84

16. Free electron solutions p. 89

17. One-dimensional motion of the electron p. 92

18. Electron between two potential barriers p. 98

19. Electron in the field of a plane wave p. 101

Chapter V. The wave equation in angular coordinates p. 104

20. Commutation relations and eigenfunctions of the angular momentum operator p. 104

21. Commutation relations and eigenfunctions of the generalized angular momentum operator p. 110

22. Solution of Dirac's equation in 4-dimensional angular coordinates p. 118

23. Solution of Dirac's equation in a conformal space-time with zero scalar curvature p. 123

Chapter VI. Properties of the affine space-time of distant parallelism p. 127

24. General coordinate transformations in space-time. The covariant basis vectors. p. 127

25. Affine space-time of distant parallelism. The torsion tensor. p. 137

26. The two covariant differentiations w_α and Δ_α. Differential equations satisfied by the fundamental quaternions p. 144

27. Further identities. Tensor components of invariant quaternions p. 151

Chapter VII. Invariant and covariant formulation of field equations p. 156

28. Invariant and covariant forms of the equations of Maxwell and Lanczos p. 156

29. Wave equations for particles of spin 1 as degenerate cases of Lanczos' equations p. 162

30. New tensor forms of Dirac's equation p. 167

Chapter VIII. Dirac's equation and general relativity p. 172

31. Spaces characterized by the vanishing of two 4-vectors derived from the torsion tensor p. 172

32. Possible relations between the rest mass, the electromagnetic potential and the torsion tensor p. 178

33. Other quaternion solutions of the divergence equation. Lanczos' equations p. 181

34. Derivation of a new form of Dirac's equation in a general coordinate system in terms of the torsion tensor p. 186

35. Quaternion representation of conformal transformations. Conformal invariance of Dirac's equation. p. 192

36. Concluding remarks p. 197

References p. 200

Appendix I. Reprint of a letter to the Phys. Rev. entitled "On Two-Component Wave Equations".

Appendix II. Reprint of a paper in the Proc. Cambridge Phil. Soc. entitled "Statistical Mechanics of a Rectilinear Assembly".

ABSTRACT.

The object of the thesis is to show that the quaternion algebra can be applied successfully to the discussion and solution of Dirac's equation and that it can be extended to general relativity to give an invariant formulation of field equations.

In the first three chapters which deal with the quaternion formulation of the wave equation, a connection is established with the matrix formalism of Dirac on one hand and with different quaternion formulations on the other. Attention is drawn to two space-like vectors, which form an orthogonal frame of reference together with the current and spin density four vectors, and new divergence equations and algebraic identities satisfied by tensorial densities involving the charge conjugate function are derived. A generalization of the wave equation by means of a space-like four-vector is given.

In the two chapters that follow a new method for solving the wave equation is developed and exact soluti ons

are obtained in several problems in a rapid and concise manner. The formalism is also shown to be useful in the non-relativistic approximation.

In the remaining chapters wave equations for particles of spin $\frac{1}{2}$ and 1 are put in a quaternion form invariant for general coordinate transformations and valid in the affine space-time of distant parallelism. By means of the new concept of covariant quaternions these invariant equations may be also expressed in covariant form. Application to Dirac's equation leads to new tensor forms for this equation and throws some light on its connection with general relativity. A new form for Dirac's matrix equation in a general coordinate system is found which only involves the torsion tensor associated with the basis vectors that have been chosen.

APPLICATIONS OF QUATERNIONS TO FIELD EQUATIONS.

General Introduction and Summary.

The advantages of the quaternion calculus over the tensor calculus in dealing with special relativity and Maxwell's electrodynamics have first been recognized by Conway (1911), Silberstein (1912, 1913), Klein (1927) and others. The chief reasons which bring about a mathematical simplification are the avoidance of tensor indices and the fact that quaternions form an algebra. It is true that complex quaternions which possess null-divisors have to be used in this connection, but even this mathematical defect turns out to be physically significant as it is associated with the existence of null-vectors in special relativity. An elegant application of the use of these null-vectors in classical electrodynamics has been given by Weiss (1941).

After the relativistic wave equation was discovered by

Dirac in 1928, its apparent lack of symmetry and its non-tensorial transformation properties led to the extension of tensor calculus known as the spinor calculus with its heavy apparel of dotted and undotted indices. It was then natural to see whether the quaternion algebra which had proved such an excellent tool in dealing with relativistic invariance would provide a simpler formulation of the wave equation. Unfortunately the answer given to this question by Lanczos (1929) was not very encouraging. The wave equation could be expressed in a very symmetrical quaternion form only by doubling the number of the components of the wave function. Another attempt was made in 1937 by Conway, who, on noting the equivalence between the algebra of linear quaternion functions and the Dirac-Eddington algebra succeeded in translating Dirac's equation into quaternion language. The difference with Lanczos was that in Conway's method the wave function was represented by a single complex quaternion instead of two, so that a correspondence between Conway's quaternion and Dirac's column matrix became possible. But the apparent lack of symmetry in Dirac's formalism was even worse in Conway's case to the extent that the relativistic invariance of the equation was not obvious at all and no simplified methods

of solution were suggested by the quaternion formalism. On the other hand Blaton (1935), Scherrer (1935) and Sommerfeld (1936) had considered the connection between spinors and quaternions, and found that quaternions corresponding to Dirac's spinor wave function (Blaton called such quaternions binions) obeyed a very simple law under Lorentz transformation. And yet, in the only reasonable quaternion equivalent of Dirac's equation, namely in Conway's equation, the wave function did not obey this simple transformation law. This state of affairs was remedied by Watson (1947) who devised a quaternion equation more symmetrical in form than Conway's, in which the wave function transformed like a binion. But Watson did not apply his formalism to the solution of Dirac's equation and the connection of all these different quaternion formulations and the matrix formulation of quantum mechanics was not very clear.

Our aim in this investigation is to show that the quaternion algebra is an ideal mathematical tool for discussing and solving Dirac's equation, leading to many new results and elegant methods of solution. Moreover its applications are shown not to be limited to special relativity as it is generally believed, but to be capable of extension to general relativity where it achieves a unified

treatment of relativistic wave equations for particles of spin $\frac{1}{2}$ and 1. Hence the present work may be regarded as consisting of three parts:

The first part covered by the first three chapters is devoted to the discussion of Dirac's equation in quaternion form. In order to translate all the results obtained into the usual formalism of quantum mechanics a new matrix form for complex quaternions is given and the connection between the two methods is worked out in detail. In Chapter II Dirac's equation is expressed in quaternion form and the connection with other quaternion treatments is found. Two-component wave equations are shown to be degenerate cases of the general equation and applicable to neutral particles only. The very simple transformation law of the wave function leads to the introduction of an orthogonal frame of reference composed of a time-like vector and three space-like vectors. The time-like vector is shown to represent the current density 4-vector and one of the space-like 4-vectors corresponds to the spin density 4-vector whereas the other two are associated with transitions between positive and negative energy levels and are identical with the real and imaginary parts of a complex vector first introduced by de Broglie (1940). Chapter III deals with the properties

of these 4-vectors and other tensorial quantities. A new method for finding the identities they satisfy leads to new relations for the tensors constructed by means of the charge conjugate function. Finally, to remove the last cause of lack of symmetry in Watson's equation a formal generalization of it is suggested. Unlike the original equation it leads to a symmetrical vector form of Dirac's equation involving a constant space-like vector. When the length of this vector does not vanish the new equation can always be transformed back into the standard Dirac equation. But when the constant space-like vector is a null-vector we obtain a new equation for a particle of spin $\frac{1}{2}$ and rest mass o. It is shown how its plane wave solutions may be used to find plane wave solutions of Maxwell's equations in vacuum.

Chapters IV and V form the second part which deals with the quaternion solutions of Dirac's equation. The quaternion formalism is seen to be useful in the non-relativistic approximation since the real and imaginary parts of the wave quaternion correspond to the large and small components in Darwin's (1928) method. The essence of our method for solving Dirac's equation exactly may be traced to Santer's (1931) suggestion to take the wave function

not as a column matrix but a square matrix which is a hypercomplex number in the Dirac-Eddington algebra. Hence Sauter gave solutions of the wave equation in simple cases without specifying the representation of the Dirac operator. In this investigation we show that the quaternion formalism is equivalent to the assumption that the wave function depends on three of Dirac's operators only and the redundant variables in Sauter's method are automatically eliminated. In the case the potential depends on one coordinate only the quaternion methods suggests a new canonical transformation which reduces the problem to the solution of a single complex linear equation. Taub's recent treatment of an electron in the external field of a plane wave is further simplified and a compact solution obtained. The application to the angular momentum operators proves to be fruitful. It is found that the generalized relativistic angular momentum operator satisfies a very simple commutation relation which has the same structure as the relation satisfied by the ordinary angular momentum operator. The rather complicated commutation relations satisfied by its different components were worked out by Born and Fuchs (1939) and are here combined in a single formula. This greatly simplifies the task of finding its eigenfunctions and the results are applied to the solution of Dirac's equation in angular coordinates and to

the case where an invariant scalar coulomb field is present.

The third part is devoted to the quaternion formulation of field equations in general relativity. The extension of Dirac's equation to general relativity was first discussed by Tetrode (1928). Other generalizations were given by Weyl (1929), Fock (1929), Taub (1937), Frenkel (1934) and others. The most important and useful of these generalizations is due to Schrödinger (1932) whose results were carried further by Bargmann (1932) and very recently by Symonds (1950). The connection with the affine space of distant parallelism was discussed by Flint (1928), Zaycoff (1929), Podolsky (1931), Haskey (1940) and more recently by Kilmister (1949, 1950) who first, and independently from of the author, connected the quaternion algebra with an affine space. Kilmister's use of quaternions in this connection, however, is different from ours, and his treatment suggests that unlike other relativistic equations Dirac's equation does not depend on the metric tensor. In our opinion the advantage of the quaternion method is due to the fact that it leads to a unified treatment of Dirac's equation and other wave equations.

In order to achieve this unified treatment, the basis vectors which characterize an ordinary coordinate transformation or an affine space-time of distant parallelism

are expressed as covariant hermitian quaternions by means of which other tensorial quaternions of the second, third and fourth rank can be constructed. Combination of these with ordinary tensors gives invariant quaternions. The procedure is very similar to the method of constructing invariant tensors from basis vectors and ordinary tensors a full account of which may be found in Brand's Vector and Tensor Analysis (1947). The chief difference is that our basis vectors are quaternions so that our invariant quaternions correspond to the contracted forms of Brand's invariant tensors. It is then shown that equations for particles of spin $\frac{1}{2}$ and 1 can be written in terms of invariant quaternions only. Equations for spin 1, including an equation recently discovered by Bhabha (1949) are all shown to be degenerate cases of Lanczos' equation for spin $\frac{1}{2}$. The application of the theory leads to two distinct tensor forms for the generalized Dirac equation given at the end of the first part. This may sound paradoxical since Dirac's wave function is known not to transform like a tensor. The explanation is as follows: it has already been remarked by Uhlenbeck and Kaporte (1931), [in Mott and Sneddon (1948, p.302)] that there are two possible ways in which one may discuss the transformation properties of the Dirac equation. The wave function may be regarded

as an invariant, then the matrix differential operator is also an invariant and the matrix coefficients of the four differential operators transform like the components of a 4-vector. Alternatively, if Dirac's matrices are regarded simply as determining the coefficients in the four wave equations equivalent to Dirac's equation and if they are kept constant it is found that the wave function is no longer an invariant but transforms like a spinor. This latter point of view is generally adopted in the literature. If, however, a tensor formulation of the wave equation is needed then we must adopt the former point of view. It will be shown that in that case, although the wave function is an invariant quaternion it may be written as a linear combination of covariant scalar quantities and covariant basis vectors. Hence it may be regarded as possessing covariant components in the same way as the invariant vectorial quaternion which represents the electro-magnetic field has for its six components the components of an antisymmetrical tensor. The second point of view is useful when we are considering "form invariance" under conformal transformations and the former when we deal with general coordinate transformations. Thus there is no a priori reason against putting Dirac's equation in tensor form. Our theory shows that not only Dirac's equation but all relativistic field

equations may be discussed from these two different points of view.

In the final chapter the Frenkel-Madelung equation is shown to have a simple geometrical interpretation. It describes an affine space in which a 4-vector and a pseudo 4-vector derived from the torsion tensor vanish identically. Equations of Dirac's type may also be derived if suitable restrictions are applied on the torsion tensor. A new formula depending on the torsion tensor only is found for Dirac's matrix equation in general coordinate systems. This turns out to be a generalization of a formula known to hold only for orthogonal coordinates and may be regarded as an advance on the Schrödinger-Bargmann theory. Finally, conformal invariance of Dirac's equation is discussed and our conclusions compared with those of Infeld Schild (1946) and Hill (1949).

It is the writer's hope that the present work may prove to be one more step towards unification of general relativity and quantum mechanics. However a severe limitation of the quaternion formalism is employed here should be pointed out: all our investigation is only concerned with the one electron problem, the wave equation being regarded as a field equation. One yet needs to show that the quaternion algebra can be applied successfully to the quantization of field equations

and to the formulation of a relativistic quantum electrodynamics.

Reprints of a letter to the Physical Review and of a paper in the Proceeding of the Cambridge Philosophical Society are given as appendices, as they were written during the period in which the thesis was prepared. The letter entitled "On two-component wave equations" gives an application of quaternions to these special equations and the paper on the "Statistical Mechanics of a Rectilinear Assembly" deals with the application of the Laplace transformation to the case of a linear assembly.

CHAPTER I.

QUATERNION INTRODUCTION.

§1. Complex quaternions: notations and matrix representations.

By a quaternion, unless otherwise specified, we mean a complex quaternion, namely the linear form

$$Q = q_0 + e_1 q_1 + e_2 q_2 + e_3 q_3$$

where the numbers

$$q_r = a_r + i b_r \qquad (r = 0,1,2,3)$$

are complex and the operators e_n $(n = 1,2,3)$ satisfy the usual relations

$$e_1^2 = e_2^2 = e_3^2 = -1 \quad , \quad e_1 e_2 = -e_2 e_1 = e_3 \quad , \text{ etc.} \qquad (1.1)$$

The imaginary unit i is an additional operator which commutes with e_n and obeys the equation $i^2 = -1$.

The quaternion conjugate of Q is defined by

$$\bar{Q} = q_0 - e_1 q_1 - e_2 q_2 - e_3 q_3 \qquad (1.2)$$

and its complex conjugate by

$$Q^* = q_0^* + e_1 q_1^* + e_2 q_2^* + e_3 q_3^* . \qquad (1.3)$$

Since the operations $Q \to \bar{Q}$ and $Q \to Q^*$

commute we can define the hermitian conjugate of Q by

$$Q^\dagger = \bar{Q}^* = q_0^* - e_1 q_1^* - e_2 q_2^* - e_3 q_3^* . \qquad (1.4)$$

It follows that if Q and R are two arbitrary quaternions and if QR denotes their product calculated by means of the multiplication rules (1 . 1) we have

$$\overline{QR} = \bar{R}\bar{Q}, \quad (QR)^* = Q^* R^*, \quad (QR)^\dagger = R^\dagger Q^\dagger . \qquad (1.5)$$

[Our notation is different from that used by Weiss (1941) but in our opinion is justified by the notations used for the regular matrix representations of quaternions.]

Any quaternion Q can always be written as the sum of two special quaternions, such as

$$Q = \mathcal{S}Q + \mathcal{V}Q = \mathcal{R}Q + \mathcal{I}Q$$

where the scalar, vectorial, real and imaginary parts of Q are given by

$$\mathcal{S}Q = \tfrac{1}{2}(Q + \bar{Q}) = a_0 + ib_0, \quad \mathcal{V}Q = \tfrac{1}{2}(Q - \bar{Q}) = \Sigma e_n (a_n + ib_n), \qquad (1.6)$$

$$\mathcal{R}Q = \tfrac{1}{2}(Q + Q^*) = a_0 + \Sigma e_n a_n, \quad \mathcal{I}Q = \tfrac{1}{2}(Q - Q^*) = i(b_0 + \Sigma e_n b_n). \qquad (1.7)$$

Now we introduce two new definitions which will be found useful. A quaternion with real scalar part and imaginary vectorial part will be called "hermitian". It is identical with its hermitian conjugate. Similarly a quaternion which is equal to minus its hermitian conjugate will be called "antihermitian". It has an imaginary scalar part and a real vectorial part. Hence any quaternion Q can also be written

as the sum of its hermitian and antihermitian parts. Thus

$$Q = \mathcal{H}Q + \mathcal{A}Q .$$

where

$$\mathcal{H}Q = \tfrac{1}{2}(Q+Q^{\dagger}) = a_0 + i\sum e_n b_n \quad , \quad \mathcal{A}Q = \tfrac{1}{2}(Q-Q^{\dagger}) = i b_0 + \sum e_n a_n \tag{1.8}$$

Besides the quaternion multiplication of two quaternions Q and R we also use in this work their scalar product defined by

$$Q.R = S(QR) = \tfrac{1}{2}(QR + \bar{R}\bar{Q}) \tag{1.9}$$

with a dot inserted between the two quaternions to distinguish the scalar from the quaternion multiplication.

Three arbitrary quaternions Q, R and S satisfy the identity

$$Q.(RS) = R.(SQ) = S.(QR) . \tag{1.10}$$

The components of the product P = QR of two quaternions can be easily expressed with the help of the scalar product. Thus if

$$P = p_0 + e_1 p_1 + e_2 p_2 + e_3 p_3$$

p_0 and p_n are given by

$$p_0 = Q.R \quad \text{and} \quad p_n = -S(e_n QR) = -R.(e_n Q) . \tag{1.11}$$

In the physical application we shall also use the three dimensional vector notation

$$\underline{q} = \sum e_n q_n$$

and the multiplication rule in its vectorial form

$$P = Q\,R = (q_0+\underline{q})(r_0+\underline{r}) = (q_0 r_0 - \underline{q}\cdot\underline{r}) + (q_0\underline{r} + \underline{q} r_0 + \underline{q}\wedge\underline{r}) \quad (1.12)$$

where $\underline{q}\cdot\underline{r}$ and $\underline{q}\wedge\underline{r}$ denote respectively the scalar and the vectorial products of the complex vectors $\underline{q}$ and $\underline{r}$.

We now proceed to give various matrix representations for quaternions. First of all there are the two well-known regular representations of the quaternion Q, namely the complex matrices.

$$\Psi = \begin{pmatrix} q_0 & -q_1 & -q_2 & -q_3 \\ q_1 & q_0 & -q_3 & q_2 \\ q_2 & q_3 & q_0 & -q_1 \\ q_3 & -q_2 & q_1 & q_0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \Psi' = \begin{pmatrix} q_0 & q_1 & q_2 & q_3 \\ -q_1 & q_0 & -q_3 & q_2 \\ -q_2 & q_3 & q_0 & -q_1 \\ -q_3 & -q_2 & q_1 & q_0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.13)$$

belonging respectively to the equations

$$Q\,R = P \quad \text{and} \quad R\,Q = P'. \quad (1.14)$$

In the case of a real quaternion A, these representations are irreducible in the field of real numbers but reducible in the field of complex numbers. We can choose, among other possibilities the following 2 x 2 complex matrices to represent the quaternion units.

$$e_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad e_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad e_3 = \begin{pmatrix} -i & 0 \\ 0 & i \end{pmatrix}. \quad (1.15)$$

Thus the real quaternion A can also be represented by

the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a_0 - ia_3 & -a_2 - ia_1 \\ a_2 - ia_1 & a_0 + ia_3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.16}$$

Our purpose is to derive new matrix representations for the complex quaternion $Q = A + iB$ using irreducible complex representations of the type (1 . 16) for A and B. To this end we rewrite the first of the equations (1 . 14) as two separate equations between the real quaternions only. If we replace Q by A + i B, R by C + i D and P by F + i G in that equation we obtain the equivalent real equations

$$\begin{cases} AC - BD = F \\ BC + AD = G \end{cases} \tag{1.17}$$

Using 2 x 2 matrices the elements of which are quaternions we can combine the equations (1 . 17) into either of the matrix equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & -B \\ B & A \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} C \\ D \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} F \\ G \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.18}$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & iB \\ iB & A \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} C \\ iD \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} F \\ iG \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.19}$$

Hence, to the complex quaternion A + iB corresponds

one of the operators

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & -B \\ B & A \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} A & iB \\ iB & A \end{pmatrix} . \tag{1.20}$$

As both types of operators possess the group property their algebras are isomorphic to the algebra of complex quaternions.

We can now replace the real quaternions A and B in (1 . 20) by their irreducible representations of the type (1 . 16) and thus obtain new matrices of the fourth rank to represent A+iB in the field of complex numbers. The second of the matrices (1 . 20) occurs in Dirac's Theory and for that reason may be called Dirac's representation of the quaternion A+iB. In order to write the full matrix of the fourth rank we denote the elements of its first column by ψ_1, ψ_2, ψ_3 and ψ_4 so that we have

$$\psi_1 = a_0 - ia_3 \quad , \psi_3 = ib_0 + b_3 \tag{1.21}$$
$$\psi_2 = a_2 - ia_1 \quad , \psi_4 = ib_2 + b_1 .$$

The new representation of the quaternion Q now reads

$$\Psi_D = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_1 & -\psi_2^* & \psi_3 & \psi_4^* \\ \psi_2 & \psi_1^* & \psi_4 & -\psi_3^* \\ \psi_3 & \psi_4^* & \psi_1 & -\psi_2^* \\ \psi_4 & -\psi_3^* & \psi_2 & \psi_1^* \end{pmatrix} . \tag{1.22}$$

It can be verified directly that complex matrices of this type form an algebra. The elements of the corresponding

quaternion are then given by the formulae (1 . 21) which we may call Darwin's transformation formulae since similar equations were first introduced by this author soon after the discovery of the relativistic wave equation (Darwin 1928). The important difference is that in our case a_ν and b_ν are real whereas the corresponding quantities in Darwin's formulae are complex.

In any of the matrix forms given above the hermitian conjugate of the matrix corresponds to the hermitian conjugate of the associated quaternion in the sense of the definition (1 . 4). It follows that a hermitian quaternion is always represented by a hermitian matrix. This incidentally justifies our definition of a hermitian quaternion.

The correspondence between a quaternion and its regular representation also extends to the operations of taking the complex conjugate and the quaternion conjugate. In fact the transposed and the complex conjugate of either the matrices (1 . 13) correspond respectively to the quaternion conjugate and the complex conjugate of the associated quaternion. However, if we use Dirac's representation, its complex conjugate no longer represents the complex conjugate of the quaternion. To find the Dirac representation of

complex conjugation we must consider the transformation which transforms the matrix

$$\Psi_D = \begin{pmatrix} A & iB \\ iB & A \end{pmatrix}$$

into

$$(\Psi_D)^C = \begin{pmatrix} A & -iB \\ -iB & A \end{pmatrix}.$$

This can be expressed by a canonical transformation

$$(\Psi_D)^C = \beta \Psi_D \beta^{-1}$$

where

$$\beta = \begin{pmatrix} I & 0 \\ 0 & -I \end{pmatrix} \qquad (1.23)$$

Here I is the unit matrix of the second rank. The matrix β has the property

$$\beta^2 = 1$$

so that the correspondence between Q^x and $(\Psi_D)^C$ may be written

$$Q^x \longleftrightarrow \beta \Psi_D \beta .$$

§2. Connection with Dirac's matrices.

Let $\alpha_n (n = 1,2,3)$ and β be four hermitian matrices which satisfy the relations

$$\alpha_n \alpha_m + \alpha_m \alpha_n = 2\delta_{mn} \quad , \beta\alpha_m + \alpha_m\beta = 0 \quad , \beta^2 = 1 . \tag{2.1}$$

It follows that the three operators

$$e'_1 = \alpha_3\alpha_2 \quad , e'_2 = \alpha_1\alpha_3 \text{ and } \quad e'_3 = \alpha_2\alpha_1 , \tag{2.2}$$

satisfy the same commutation rules (1 . 1) as the quaternion units e_n. Furthermore the operator

$$i' = \alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3 \tag{2.3}$$

commutes with e'_n and obeys the equation

$$i'^2 = -1 .$$

With the help of this operator we can write

$$\alpha_n = i'e'_n \tag{2.4}$$

so that the algebra of the linear forms

$$Q' = a_0 + \alpha_1 b_1 + \alpha_2 b_2 + \alpha_3 b_3 + \alpha_3\alpha_2 a_1 + \alpha_1\alpha_3 a_2 + \alpha_2\alpha_1 a_3 + \alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3 b_0 \tag{2.5}$$

or, with the new notations introduced in this section

$$Q' = (a_0 + i' b_0) + \sum (a_n + i' b_n) e'_n \tag{2.6}$$

is seen to be isomorphic to the algebra of the quaternions

$$Q = (a_0 + i b_0) + \sum (a_n + i b_n) e_n \tag{2.7}$$

Hence we have proved that the largest proper sub-algebra of the Dirac-Eddington algebra generated by α_1, α_2, α_3 and β which is the algebra generated by the three operators α_1, α_2

and α_3 is isomorphic to the algebra of complex quaternions. As the numbers a_ν, b_ν are real the hypercomplex number (2 . 5) may be represented by any of the matrices (1 . 13) or (1 . 20).

As a consequence of the hermitian property of α_m we have

$$\alpha_m{}^\dagger = \alpha_m \ , \quad (\alpha_m \alpha_n)^\dagger = -\alpha_m \alpha_n \ , (\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3)^\dagger = -\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3 \ .$$

Hence, in the isomorphism

$$Q' \longleftrightarrow Q$$

the image of $(Q')^\dagger$ is $Q^\dagger$. Again, denoting the linear form $\beta Q' \beta$ by $(Q')^c$ we find that the image of $(Q')^c$ is Q^* since the total effect of this operation is to change the sign of i' in (2. 6).

Now supposing that Q' is represented by the matrix (1 . 22) where ψ_ν is determined by (1 . 21), we know that β can be represented by (1 . 23). Hence if β has the diagonal form (1 . 23) the matrices α_n are the coefficients of b_n in (1.22) and may be written as

$$\alpha_n = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & i\ell_n \\ i\ell_n & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sigma_n \\ \sigma_n & 0 \end{pmatrix} \qquad (2.8)$$

where the complex matrices σ_n stand for i times the matrices (1 . 15) and are identical with Pauli's spin matrices.

To sum up: any complex quaternion (2 . 6) can be

be represented by (2 . 5) where the operators α_n denote Dirac's matrices (2 . 8). The resulting matrix is identical with (1 . 22). The matrix corresponding to the complex conjugate of this quaternion can be derived from the original matrix by the canonical transformation (1 . 23) where β is Dirac's remaining matrix operator. The matrix which corresponds to the hermitian conjugate of the quaternion is obtained by taking the hermitian conjugate of the original matrix.

In quantum mechanics the wave equation is usually written as a matrix operator operating on the column matrix ψ which represents the wave function. We shall see later that Dirac's wave equation may be regarded as the first column of a matrix equation in which the wave function itself is a square matrix of the form Ψ_D (1 . 22). The first column of this matrix wave function is identical with ψ. Let Ψ be the complex quaternion associated with the matrix wave function. Ψ can always be put in the form

$$\Psi = A_1 + e_1 A_2 + i B_1 + i e_2 B_2 \qquad (2.9)$$

where A_1, A_2, B_1, B_2 are real quaternions which commute with e_3. If we denote by A'_1, A'_2, B'_1, B'_2 the same quantities where e_3 has been replaced by -i, Darwin's

formulae can be written

$$\psi_1 = A'_1 \,,\ \psi_2 = A'_2 \,,\ \psi_3 = iB'_1 \,,\ \psi_4 = iB'_2 \qquad (2.10)$$

Thus from the quaternion Ψ we can derive the first column ψ of its Dirac matrix representation through (2 . 10). We shall call ψ the column matrix corresponding to the quaternion Ψ. Conversely if the complex column matrix ψ is given, from its elements we can derive a quaternion which we call the quaternion corresponding to (or associated with) the column matrix ψ. Now, to an operation applied on the quaternion Ψ will correspond an operation applied to the column matrix ψ associated with it and vice-versa.

What we need is a list of equivalent operations applied to ψ and to Ψ to enable us to translate quaternions equations involving Ψ into matrix equations involving the column matrix ψ. Such a code is easily found if we remember that ψ is the first column of the Dirac matrix representation of Ψ. Thus we find the correspondence relations which will be used throughout this investigation

$$\begin{cases} i\ell_n \Psi \longleftrightarrow \alpha_n \psi \,,\ i\Psi \longleftrightarrow \alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\psi \,,\ \Psi^* \longleftrightarrow \beta\psi \\ \Psi i\ell_1 \longleftrightarrow -i\alpha_1\beta\psi^* \,,\ \Psi i\ell_2 \longleftrightarrow \alpha_2\beta\psi^* \,,\ \Psi i\ell_3 \longleftrightarrow -i\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\psi \end{cases} \qquad (2.11)$$

Other useful correspondences which may be deduced from (2 . 11) are

$$\begin{cases} e_1 \Psi e_3 \leftrightarrow i\alpha_2\alpha_3\psi \quad , e_2\Psi e_3 \leftrightarrow i\alpha_3\alpha_1\psi \quad , e_3\Psi e_3 \leftrightarrow i\alpha_1\alpha_2\psi, \quad (2.12) \\ \Psi e_3 \leftrightarrow -i\psi \quad , ie_2\Psi^* ie_2 \leftrightarrow \psi^* \quad , \text{etc.} \end{cases}$$

As an immediate application of these formulae we note that the four columns of the matrix Ψ_D (1 . 22) are given by

$$\psi \ , \ \psi' = \alpha_1\alpha_3\beta\psi^* \ , \ \psi'' = -i\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\psi \ , \ \psi''' = -i\alpha_2\beta\psi^* \quad (2.13).$$

and correspond respectively to the quaternions

$$\Psi \ , \ \Psi e_2 \ , \ \Psi ie_3 \ , \ \Psi ie_1 .$$

In order to complete this code of correspondences we still need to give the quaternion representation of the product $\psi^* \cdot \varphi$ where ψ is the row matrix and φ the column matrix corresponding respectively to the quaternions Ψ and Φ . The reason is that all expectation values in wave mechanics are of the form $\psi^* \cdot \varphi$. Now ψ^* is the first row of the hermitian conjugate $(\Psi_D)^\dagger$ of Ψ_D and φ is the first column of Φ_D . Hence the complex number $\psi^* \cdot \varphi$ is the first element of the matrix $(\Psi^\dagger \Phi)_D$ and we have

$$\mathcal{R}(\psi^* \cdot \varphi) = \mathcal{R}(\Psi^\dagger \cdot \Phi)$$
$$-i\,\mathcal{I}(\psi^* \cdot \varphi) = \mathcal{R}(\psi^* \cdot [-i\varphi]) = \mathcal{R}(\Psi^\dagger \Phi e_3)$$

so that

$$\psi^* \cdot \varphi = \mathcal{R}(\Psi^\dagger \cdot \Phi) + i\,\mathcal{R}(\Psi^\dagger \Phi e_3) . \quad (2.14).$$

Another useful relation is

$$-\mathcal{J}(\Psi^{\dagger}.\Phi) = \mathcal{R}[\Psi^{\dagger}.(-i\Phi)] = -\mathcal{R}(\psi^{x}.\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\psi).$$

Hence

$$\Psi^{\dagger}.\Phi = \mathcal{R}(\psi^{x}.\psi) - i\mathcal{R}(\psi^{x}.\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\psi). \qquad (2.15)$$

In particular if ω is a hermitian matrix and if

$$\varphi = \omega\psi$$

then the scalar $\psi^{x}.\omega\psi$ is real. In quaternion form the quaternion Ψ associated with ψ is related to Φ associated with φ by

$$\Phi = \Omega(\Psi)$$

where Ω is an operator which corresponds to ω. For instance if $\omega=\beta$ where β is the fourth Dirac matrix, then $\Omega(\Psi) = \Psi^{x}$. If $\omega=\alpha_1$ then $\Omega(\Psi) = ie_1\Psi$.

From (2 . 14) we obtain the important formula

$$\psi^{x}.\omega\psi = \mathcal{R}[\Psi^{\dagger}.\Omega(\Psi)]. \qquad (2.16)$$

§3. Canonical forms for complex quaternions.

In this section we show the different ways in which quaternions can be expressed in terms of their angular coordinates. The polar form

$$Q = q_0 + \underline{q} = s\, e^{\underline{\kappa}\gamma} \tag{3.1}$$

is well known (cf. Brand, p. 412). Here

$$s^2 = N(Q) = Q\bar{Q} = q_0^2 + q_1^2 + q_2^2 + q_3^2 \tag{3.2}$$

is the norm of the quaternion, and the complex number

$$s = |Q| = (Q\bar{Q})^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

is called its modulus. The exponential is defined as

$$\exp(\underline{\kappa}\gamma) = \cos\gamma + \underline{\kappa}\sin\gamma$$

where

$$\underline{\kappa} = (q_1^2 + q_2^2 + q_3^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\, \underline{q}$$

is a unit vector with complex components. The square of $\underline{\kappa}$ is minus one and its norm is unity. The angle γ is complex and is defined by

$$\tan\gamma = q_0^{-1}\,(q_1^2 + q_2^2 + q_3^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

In physical applications it is more advantageous to employ two new canonical forms where real angles and real unit vectors occur only. We first note that if H is a hermitian quaternion with norm unity (3 . 1) gives

$$H = \exp(i\underline{\varepsilon}\alpha) = \cosh\alpha + i\underline{\varepsilon}\sinh\alpha \tag{3.3}$$

Similarly a real quaternion R with norm unity can be written as

$$R = \exp(\underline{\omega}\beta) = \cos\beta + \underline{\omega}\sin\beta \qquad (3.4)$$

In (3.3) and (3.4) $\underline{\varepsilon}$, $\underline{\omega}$ are unit vectors with real components and α, β are real numbers.

Let us now try to express the quaternion

$$V = \sigma^{-1} Q \qquad (V\bar{V} = 1)$$

in one of the forms

$$V = H R \quad \text{or} \quad V = R' H' \qquad (3.5)$$

where R' is real and H' hermitian. This can be achieved in the following way:

Let

$$V = A + iB$$

where A and B denote respectively the real and the imaginary parts of V. Since the norm of V is one, we have

$$A\bar{A} - B\bar{B} = 1 \qquad (3.6)$$

$$B\bar{A} + A\bar{B} = 2B.\bar{A} = 2\bar{B}.A = 0 \qquad (3.7)$$

Now we can write

$$V = |A|\,(1 + iB\bar{A})\,A\,|A|^{-1}.$$

From (3.7) it follows that $B\bar{A}$ is real and purely vectorial. Hence, if we put

$$H = |A|\,(1 + iB\bar{A})$$

$$R = A\,|A|^{-1}$$

we see that H is hermitian and R real. Moreover, using (3.6) we get

$$|H| = 1.$$

In the same way we can write

$$V = R'H'$$

with

$$R' = R = A\,|A|^{-1}$$

and

$$H' = |A|\,(1 + i\bar{A}B).$$

We conclude that any complex quaternion Q with non-vanishing norm can be put in one of the forms

$$Q = s\, e^{i\xi\alpha}\, e^{\omega\beta} \qquad (3.8)$$

or $$Q = s\, e^{\omega\beta}\, e^{i\xi'\alpha'}$$

where s is complex and $\xi, \omega, \xi', \alpha, \beta, \alpha'$ are all real.

§4. Representation of time-like and space-like four-vectors. Orthogonal transformations.

Following P. Weiss (1941) we shall represent the position vector (x^0, x^1, x^2, x^3) in the space-time of special relativity by the hermitian quaternion

$$X = I_\nu x^\nu$$

where $x^0 = ct$ and

$$I_0 = 1 , \quad I_n = ie_n \quad . \quad (n = 1,2,3) \qquad (4.1)$$

A summation over ν $(\nu = 0,1,2,3)$ is implied. The infinitesimal displacement vector (dx^0, dx^1, dx^2, dx^3) is likewise represented by

$$dX = I_\nu dx^\nu$$

If $\gamma^{\mu\nu}$ is the metric tensor of special relativity by which indices are raised and lowered, we find

$$I^\lambda = \gamma^{\lambda\nu} I_\nu = \bar{I}_\lambda$$

so that the norm of dX

$$N(dX) = dX\, d\bar{X} = I_\lambda . \bar{I}_\nu\, dx^\lambda dx^\nu = dx_\nu\, dx^\nu$$

is positive if dX is time-like and negative if it is space-like.

Now consider the coordinate transformation

$$(x')^\nu = f^\nu(x^\mu)$$

and let

$$dX' = I_\nu (dx')^\nu$$

The transformation is conformal if

$$dX' = Q\, dX\, Q^{\dagger} \qquad (4.2)$$

where Q is a complex quaternion, because taking the norm of both sides of (4 . 2) we get

$$(dx')^{\nu}\,(dx')_{\nu} = \ell^2\, dx^{\nu} dx_{\nu}$$

where the function

$$\ell^2 = (Q\bar{Q})(Q\bar{Q})^{*}$$

is positive definite so that a time-like vector is transformed into another time-like vector. The physical meaning of the transformation becomes clear if we replace Q by its canonical expression (3. 8). Thus (4 . 2) can be rewritten in the form

$$dX' = \rho\rho^{*}\, e^{i\underline{\xi}\alpha} e^{\underline{\omega}\beta}\, dX\, e^{-\underline{\omega}\beta} e^{i\underline{\xi}\alpha}.$$

It is clearly equivalent to a rotation round the axis $\underline{\omega}$ through the angle 2β followed by a Lorentz transformation in the $\underline{\xi}$ direction with a velocity of translation $c\tanh 2\alpha$ and combined with an isotropic dilatation of the space and time coordinates by the factor $\rho\rho^{*}$.

It may be noted that (4 . 2) is invariant for the transformation

$$Q \to Q e^{i\lambda} \qquad (4.3)$$

Hence we can always choose λ so that $|Q|$ is real. For reasons which will become clear later (§6) (4 . 3) will be called a pseudo-gauge transformation.

Now we give canonical forms for time-like and space-like hermitian vectors with non-zero modulus. If $a = |A|$ denotes the modulus of a hermitian quaternion A which represents a time-like four-vector, it is always possible to find a frame of reference where this vector is represented by the positive scalar a which becomes its time component. It follows that A can be derived from a through an orthogonal transformation which is specified by a certain quaternion C with unit norm. Hence any time-like hermitian quaternion may be written

$$A = |A|\, C C^{\dagger} \quad , \quad (|C| = 1) \, . \qquad (4.4)$$

Similarly a space-like vector B_3 will, in a suitable frame, possess only one non-vanishing component along a specified spatial direction which can always be taken as the Oz direction. In this "rest system" the hermitian quaternion which corresponds to this vector becomes

$$(-B_3 \bar{B}_3)^{\frac{1}{2}} i e_3 ,$$

and therefore can always be written in the form

$$B_3 = (-B_3 \bar{B}_3)^{\frac{1}{2}} C' i e_3 C'^{\dagger} = |B_3|\, C' e_3 C'^{\dagger}$$

where again C determines a certain orthogonal transformation. In particular if B_3 is along the Oz axis in the same frame of reference in which A is scalar we can take $C' = C$

Finally let B_1 and B_2 two other space-like vectors which are Lorentz orthogonal to each other and to B_3 and A. In the rest system where $A = |A|$ and $B_3 = B_3 | e_3$, B_1 will reduce

to its component along the Ox axis and B_2 to its component along the Oy axis. Hence they must be of the form

$$B_1 = |B_1| C e_1 C^\dagger \quad \text{and} \quad B_2 = |B_2| C e_2 C^\dagger$$

where $|B_1|$ and $|B_2|$ are imaginary.

Now if R denotes a real quaternion with unit norm the transformation

$$C \to CR \tag{4.5}$$

which defines a spatial rotation in the rest system leaves A invariant but affects the space-like vectors B_n. If R commutes with one of the quaternion units, say e_3, then it is of the form

$$R = \exp(e_3 \gamma)$$

and the transformation

$$C \to C e^{e_3 \gamma} \tag{4.6}$$

which defines a rotation in the rest system round the axis leaves both A and B_3 invariant but transforms a linear combination of B_1 and B_2 into another linear combination of the same vectors. It is a special case of the general spatial rotation in the rest system (4 . 5) which has been called "an inner rotation" by Weiss (1941). (4 . 6) will be called a "gauge transformation" and this definition of the gauge will be justified in § 6.

We shall now find the transformation law for the quaternion C when the four-vectors A and B_n undergo a constant

orthogonal transformation specified by the quaternion Γ.

Thus, when the coordinates transform according to

$$dx' = \Gamma\, dx\, \Gamma^{\dagger} \qquad (|\Gamma| = 1) \tag{4.7}$$

we have

$$A' = |A|\, \Gamma C C^{\dagger} \Gamma^{\dagger} \quad \text{and} \quad B'_n = |B_n|\, \Gamma C e_n C^{\dagger} \Gamma^{\dagger}$$

so that we can write

$$A' = |A'|\, C' C'^{\dagger} \quad \text{and} \quad B'_n = |B'_n|\, C' e_n C'^{\dagger}$$

assuming for C the transformation law

$$C' = \Gamma C \quad \text{or} \quad C \to \Gamma C \,. \tag{4.8}$$

This is the celebrated spinor transformation law.

In the next section it will be shown that in the quaternion form of Dirac's equation the wave function transforms according to (4 . 8).

The behaviour of six-vectors in an orthogonal transformation is also found easily. If P_1 and P_2 are two four-vectors, the components of the purely vectorial quaternion

$$G = V(P_1 \bar{P}_2) = \tfrac{1}{2}(P_1 \bar{P}_2 - P_2 \bar{P}_1)$$

form a six-vector. Since in an orthogonal transformation

$$P'_1 = \Gamma P_1 \Gamma^{\dagger} \quad \text{and} \quad P'_2 = \Gamma P_2 \Gamma^{\dagger}$$

we find

$$G' = \tfrac{1}{2}\Gamma(P_1 \Gamma^{\dagger} \Gamma^{*} \bar{P}_2 - P_2 \Gamma^{\dagger} \Gamma^{*} \bar{P}_1)\bar{\Gamma} = \Gamma G \bar{\Gamma} \,. \tag{4.9}$$

CHAPTER II

Quaternion Formulation of Dirac's Equation.

§5. Dirac's equation in Watson's quaternion form.

Dirac's equation in its algebraic form and in field free conditions reads

$$(p_0 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \sum \alpha_n p_n)\psi = m_0 c \beta \psi \qquad (5.1)$$

where α_n, β are defined by (2 . 1) and ψ is a column matrix with complex elements. We have seen that ψ can be regarded as the first column of the matrix form Ψ_D (1.22) of a complex quaternion Ψ . With the help of the code (2 . 11) the corresponding quaternion equation can be written immediately as

$$\bar{P}\Psi = m_0 c \Psi^x \qquad (5.2)$$

where

$$P = p_0 + i \sum e_n p_n$$

is the hermitian quaternion which represents the energy momentum four-vector.

The Lorentz invariance of (5 . 2) is obvious. Under the constant orthogonal transformation (4. 7), $\bar{P}$ becomes

$$\bar{P}' = \Gamma^x \bar{P} \bar{\Gamma} \qquad (5.3)$$

Hence (5 . 2) is invariant if Ψ obeys the same law (4 . 8) as C, i.e.

$$\Psi' = P\Psi . \tag{5.4}$$

We now consider the improper Lorentz transformation which consists in changing the sign of the space coordinate (space reflection). It is defined by the equation

$$P' = P^{\times}$$

and (5 . 2) is restored to its original form by taking

$$\Psi' = \Psi^{\times} \tag{5.5}$$

which is the transformation law for a space reflection.

By choosing Dirac's matrix form (1 . 22) for the quaternion Ψ we get the following matrix equation equivalent to (5 . 2)

$$(p_0 - \Sigma \alpha_n p_n)\Psi_D = m_0 c \beta \Psi_D \beta \tag{5.6}$$

since $\Psi^{\times}$ is represented by $\beta \Psi_D \beta$ in this case. Equating the first columns of both sides in (5 . 6) we obtain (5 . 1). The three remaining columns give equations which correspond to the quaternion equations derived from (5 . 2) by multiplying both sides to the right by e_2, ie_3 and ie_1. They are

$$(p_0 - \Sigma \alpha_n p_n)\psi' = m_0 c \beta \psi'$$

$$(p_0 - \Sigma \alpha_n p_n)\psi'' = -m_0 c \beta \psi''$$

and

$$(p_0 - \Sigma \alpha_n p_n)\psi''' = -m_0 c \beta \psi'''$$

where ψ', ψ'' and ψ''' are given by (2 . 13).

The quaternion formulation (5 . 2) leads immediately to the solution of the algebraic Dirac equation for P. Taking the complex conjugate of (5 . 2), using (1 . 5) and multiplying to the right by $(\Psi^{\times})^{-1}$ we obtain

$$P = m_0 c \Psi (\Psi^{\times})^{-1} \qquad (5.7)$$

We have assumed that the norm of Ψ does not vanish. Hence Ψ has the form

$$\Psi = \tau e^{i\lambda/2} C$$

where τ and λ are real numbers and C is a quaternion with unit norm. Hence (5 . 7) becomes

$$P = m_0 c e^{i\lambda} C C^{\dagger}$$

Now, since in this equation P and $CC^{\dagger}$ are hermitian we must have $\lambda = n\pi$. On the other hand, taking the modulus of both sides we find that $|P|$ must be equal to $\pm m_0 c$ so that (5 . 7) reduces to

$$P = \pm m_0 c \, CC^{\dagger} \quad , \quad (C\bar{C} = 1) \qquad (5.8)$$

Comparing (5 . 8) with the canonical form (4 . 4) for a time-like hermitian quaternion we can state that the algebraic form of Dirac's equation merely expresses in quaternion language that the energy-momentum four-vector is time-like, the rest mass, hence the energy being either positive or negative.

The quaternion C can always be written in the canonical form

$$C = e^{\frac{1}{2} i \kappa \alpha} R$$

with the help of (3 . 6). Here R is a real quaternion with norm unity. Then (5 . 8) determines $\underline{\kappa}$ and α in terms of p_ν and we obtain

$$p_o = m_o c \cosh\alpha \quad \text{and} \quad \underline{p} = \underline{\kappa}\, m_o c \sinh\alpha \qquad (5.9)$$

or $\quad p_o = -m_o c \cosh\alpha \quad \text{and} \quad \underline{p} = -\underline{\kappa}\, m_o c \sinh\alpha$.

We now pass to the quaternion formulation of the matrix wave equation which is derived from (5 . 1) by replacing p_o by $ih\partial_o$ and p_n by $-ih\partial_n$. When the operand is no longer the column matrix ψ but the quaternion Ψ , the relevant formula of the code (2 . 12) provides the equivalent quaternion operators

$$p_o \Psi = -h\partial_o \Psi e_3 \quad , \quad p_n \Psi = h\partial_n \Psi e_3 .$$

If we put

$$D = \bar{I}^\nu \partial_\nu = \partial_o + i\Sigma e_n \partial_n$$

we see that $\bar{\mathrm{P}}$ is replaced by the operator

$$-h\, D(\;)e_3 .$$

Thus an explicit reference to the Oz direction in the rest system is introduced in the wave equation through the unit quaternion e_3 . More symmetrical quaternion representations of the operators p_ν will be discussed in §§ 7 and 14. With the present choice for p_ν the wave equation becomes

$$D\Psi = \mu \Psi^\times e_3 \quad , \quad (\mu = m_o c/h) . \qquad (5.10)$$

In the presence of an electromagnetic field, $\overline{P}$ gets replaced by

$$\overline{P} + e\overline{A}$$

where A is the hermitian quaternion which corresponds to the electromagnetic potential with components A_ν

$$A = I^\nu A_\nu = A_0 - \sum i e_n A_n$$

so that we obtain

$$\hbar D\Psi = (mc\Psi^* + e\bar{A}\Psi)e_3 \qquad (5.11)$$

This equation is essentially equivalent to the quaternion form of Dirac's equation proposed by Watson (1947).

If Dirac's matrix form is used to represent the quaternion in (5 . 11) we get

$$\hbar(\partial_0 + \sum \alpha_n \partial_n)\Psi_D = \{mc\beta\Psi_D\beta + (eA_0 + e\sum \alpha_n A_n)\Psi_D\}\alpha_2\alpha_1 \qquad (5.12)$$

Writing that the first columns of the matrices on both sides of this equation are equal we find

$$i\hbar(\partial_0 + \sum \alpha_n \partial_n)\psi = mc\beta\psi + (eA_0 + e\sum \alpha_n A_n)\psi \qquad (5.13)$$

that is, the usual form of Dirac's equation where the wave function is represented by the column matrix ψ.

Writing that the remaining three columns on both sides are equal we find three more matrix equations of the type (5 . 13). They correspond to the equations obtained by multiplying the quaternion equation (5 . 11) to the right by e_2, ie_3 and ie_1. Translated into Dirac's formalism

which involve the column matrix ψ , they read

$$i\hbar(\partial_0+\Sigma\alpha_n\partial_n)\psi' = -(mc\beta+eA_0+e\Sigma\alpha_nA_n)\psi'$$

$$i\hbar(\partial_0+\Sigma\alpha_n\partial_n)\psi'' = (-mc\beta+eA_0+e\Sigma\alpha_nA_n)\psi''$$

$$i\hbar(\partial_0+\Sigma\alpha_n\partial_n)\psi''' = (mc\beta-eA_0-e\Sigma\alpha_nA_n)\psi''',$$

where ψ', ψ'', ψ''' are the second, third and fourth columns of the matrix Ψ_D and are given by (2.13). All these equations may of course be derived directly from the usual wave equation (5 . 13). Thus the matrix equation (5 . 12) groups in one equation four different forms of (5.13). It will be noted that ψ''' is the change conjugate of ψ since it satisfies Dirac's equation with e changed into -e. The column matrix ψ'' satisfies the wave equation with a negative rest-mass and in the equation satisfied by ψ' the sign of both the rest mass and the charge is changed.

§6. Gauge and pseudo-gauge invariance - change conjugation.

Consider a Dirac particle in a pseudo-vector field. If B_0, B_n are the components of the pseudo-vector, the additional terms in Dirac's matrix equation (5.13) have the form

$$\kappa\,(i\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3 B_0 + i\alpha_2\alpha_3 B_1 + i\alpha_3\alpha_1 B_2 + i\alpha_1\alpha_2 B_3)\,\psi$$

where κ is a coupling constant. With the help of (2. 11) and (2 . 12) we are led to add the term

$$\kappa\,(iB_0 + \Sigma\, e_n B_n)\,\Psi$$

on the right hand side of the quaternion equation (5 . 11) if we suppose that an electromagnetic field is also present.

Putting

$$B = B_0 + \Sigma i e_n B_n$$

we write the wave equation with vector and pseudo-vector interactions as

$$\hbar\, D\Psi = (m_0 c\,\Psi^* + e\,\bar{A}\,\Psi)\,e_3 + i\kappa\,\bar{B}\,\Psi. \qquad (6.1)$$

Now let Ψ be subject to the transformation

$$\Psi \to \Psi\, \exp(e_3\gamma/\hbar) \qquad (6.2)$$

where γ is a real scalar function. (6 . 1) can be restored to its original form if eA is transformed according to

$$e\bar{A} \to e\bar{A} - D\gamma.$$

As Ψ has the same transformation properties as C in §4 this justifies the name of gauge transformation given to Weiss' special inner rotation (4. 6). The transformation of the column matrix ψ which corresponds to (6 . 2) is obviously the familiar gauge transformation

$$\psi \to \psi \exp(-i\beta/\hbar)$$

This gauge transformation (6 . 2) should not be confused with the rotation of the coordinate system round the Oz axis through the angle β and which is expressed by

$$\Psi \to \exp\left(\tfrac{1}{2} e_3 \beta\right) \Psi .$$

We now consider the transformation which replaces $\bar{B}$ by $(k\bar{B} - D\lambda)$ in (6 . 1) . It is given by

$$\Psi \to \Psi \exp(i\lambda/\hbar) \qquad (6.3)$$

and leads to a gauge transformation of the pseudo-vector potential. This is why we call (4 . 3) and (6 . 3) pseudo-gauge transformations. The matrix equivalent of (6 . 3) involving ψ is found to be

$$\psi \to \exp(\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3 \lambda/\hbar)\, \psi . \qquad (6.4)$$

The main difference between the pseudo-gauge transformation (6 . 3) and the gauge transformation (6 . 2) is that the rest mass, although invariant under the latter, is changed into

$$m_0 \to m_0 \exp(-2i\lambda/\hbar)$$

by the former. In the matrix form of the wave equation the

additional term resulting from the transformation (6 . 4) reads

$$(c_1 + c_2\,\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3)\beta\psi$$

where

$$c_1 = m_0 c\,[\cos(2\lambda/\hbar) - 1]\,,\quad c_2 = -m_0 c \sin(2\lambda/\hbar). \qquad (6.5)$$

Hence as a result of (6 . 4) the pseudo-vector potential suffers a gauge transformation while new scalar and pseudo-scalar interaction terms $c_1\beta$ and $c_2\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\beta$ appear in the wave equation.

Now suppose $\beta = 0$ and let

$$\Psi_+ = \Psi(E) = \Phi_+\, e^{-e_3 E t/\hbar}$$

where E is a positive value of the energy and Φ_+ independent of time. (6 . 1) can be written (using the notation 7.7),

$$E\,\Phi_+ - i\,\underline{\nabla}\,\Phi_+ e_3 = m_0 c\,\Phi_+^{\times} + e\,\bar{A}\,\Phi_+ . \qquad (6.6)$$

If we consider a solution corresponding to a negative value of the energy

$$\Psi_- = \Psi(-E) = \Phi_-\, e^{e_3 E t/\hbar}$$

we find that Φ_- satisfies

$$-E\,\Phi_- - i\,\underline{\nabla}\,\Phi_- e_3 = m_0 c\,\Phi_-^{\times} + e\,\bar{A}\,\Phi_- . \qquad (6.7)$$

We are looking for a relation between Ψ_- and Ψ_+. Multiplication of (6 . 6) to the right by ie_1 gives, after changing the sign of both members of the equation,

$$-E\,(\Phi_+ ie_1) - i\,\underline{\nabla}\,(\Phi_+ ie_1)e_3 = m_0 c\,(\Phi_+ ie_1)^{\times} - e\bar{A}\,(\Phi_+ ie_1). \qquad (6.8)$$

We see that $\Phi_+ ie_1$ satisfies the same equation as Φ_- with the opposite sign of the charge e. Hence

$$\Psi_- = \Psi(-\epsilon, e) = \Phi_- e^{e_3 \epsilon t/\hbar} = \Phi_+(-e) ie_1 e^{e_3 \epsilon t/\hbar} = \Phi_+(-e) e^{-e_3 \epsilon t/\hbar} ie_1$$

so that

$$\Psi(-\epsilon, e) = \Psi(\epsilon, -e) ie_1 . \qquad (6.9)$$

In other words, if we know a positive energy solution of the wave equation, by changing the sign of the charge in this solution and by multiplying it to the right by ie_1 we obtain a negative energy solution of the original equation. The operation of multiplication of Ψ to the right by ie_1 is called "charge conjugation" since the charge conjugate function

$$\Psi ie_1$$

satisfies the wave equation with an opposite value of the charge.

We have seen (2 . 13) that to the transformation

$$\Psi \to \Psi ie_1$$

corresponds the matrix transformation

$$\psi \to -i\alpha_2\beta\psi^*$$

which is the standard form (Hill & Landshoff Rev.Mod.Phys.1938) for the charge conjugation.

§7. Comparison with other quaternion forms of Dirac's equation.

Dirac's equation in the absence of field may be written

$$\beta^\nu \partial_\nu \psi = \mu \psi \qquad (7.1)$$

where the operators β^ν obey the commutation relations

$$\beta^\lambda \beta^\nu + \beta^\nu \beta^\lambda = -2\gamma^{\lambda\nu}. \qquad (7.2)$$

$\gamma^{\lambda\nu}$ is the metric tensor of special relativity.

It is possible to find various realizations of the operators β^ν in terms of linear quaternion functions. The first in date was given by Lanczos (1929) and can be expressed by the matrix formula

$$\beta^\nu = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \bar{I}^\nu \\ -I^\nu & 0 \end{pmatrix} \qquad (7.3)$$

where the hermitian quaternions are given by (1 . 8). The operator (7 . 3) is assumed to operate on a column matrix composed of two complex quaternions χ and η .

Remembering that

$$D = \bar{I}^\nu \partial_\nu = \sum I_\nu \partial_\nu$$

and using the representation (7 . 3) in (7 . 1) we obtain Lanczos' equations

$$\begin{cases} D\eta = \mu\chi \\ -\bar{D}\chi = \mu\eta \end{cases} \qquad (7.4)$$

which are relativistically symmetrical in form and represent a particle of spin $\frac{1}{2}$. However, as the wave function has sixteen real components it cannot be put into a one to one correspondence with the usual Dirac column matrix which depends on eight real functions.

Another quaternion representation of β^ν was given by Conway (1937). It can be written explicitly as

$$\beta^0 = (\ )\underline{a}\ , \qquad \beta^n = \imath_n(\ )\underline{b} \tag{7.5}$$

where $\underline{a}$ and $\underline{b}$ are two real vectorial quaternions such that

$$S(\underline{a}\,\underline{b}) = 0\ , \qquad N(\underline{a}) = N(\underline{b}) = 1\ .$$

It is understood that the wave function is represented by a complex quaternion Ψ which has to be inserted in the brackets in (7 . 5). In particular, taking

$$\underline{a} = e_1 \qquad \underline{b} = e_2$$

one obtains one form of Conway's equation, namely

$$\partial_0 \Psi e_1 + \underline{\nabla}\,\Psi\, \imath_2 = \mu \Psi \tag{7.6}$$

where

$$\underline{\nabla} = \sum e_n \partial_n\ . \tag{7.7}$$

As the imaginary unit does not appear in (7 . 6), Ψ might be taken as a real quaternion. The wave equation in this case would only involve 4 real functions. In the next section it will be shown that it leads to a two-component wave function. In order to introduce the electromagnetic

field through the substitution

$$\hbar\,\partial_\nu \rightarrow \hbar\,\partial_\nu - ie\,A_\nu$$

we must take Ψ complex. Conway has shown that the equation obtained in this way is equivalent to Dirac's matrix equation when a real representation is chosen for α_1, α_2 and α_3. In Conway's equation the charge conjugate function is simply Ψ^* and the function which corresponds to a time reflection is Ψe_2. The chief defect of Conway's representation is the non-symmetric form of (7 . 5) which makes it impossible to bring the gradient operator D into the wave equation. Even in the very simple case of the free electron (see Conway, 1948) the solution of (7 . 6) is difficult and the equation does not allow a simple treatment of the problem as in our § 13.

Watson's form (5 . 11) of the wave equation corresponds to the following choice for the operators β^ν

$$\beta^\nu = -\bar{I}^\nu (\;)^* e_3 \qquad (7.8)$$

and will be used throughout this investigation.

An immediate generalization of this representation is

$$\beta^\nu = -\bar{I}^\nu (\;)^* \underline{a}$$

where $\underline{a}$ is again a purely vectorial real quaternion with unit norm. For instance if we choose $\underline{a} = e_1$, we can write Dirac's equation as

$$D\Psi = \mu \Psi^* e_1 .$$

in the absence of field and as

$$D\Psi = (\mu\Psi^{*} + e\bar{A}\Psi)e_1 \qquad (7.9)$$

when the electromagnetic field is present. We can restore (7 . 9) to Watson's form by making the transformation

$$\Psi \to \Psi \exp(-e_2\pi/4) .$$

Finally we can take

$$\beta^{\nu} = \bar{I}^{\nu}(\ )^{\dagger}T$$

where T is an antihermitian quaternion with unit norm. This is formally a relativistic generalisation of (7 . 8) the consequences of which will be studied in § 14.

Our purpose now is to discuss the relationship between Watson's and Conway's equation in order that a solution of Conway's equation may be derived from a corresponding solution of Watson's equation. First we note that any complex quaternion

$$\Psi = G + iH$$

with real part G and imaginary part H can be written in the form

$$\Psi = \tfrac{1}{2}U(1+ie_2) + \tfrac{1}{2}Ve_3(1-ie_1) \qquad (7.11)$$

where U and V are again real quaternions. The relations between these two sets of real quaternions are easily found to be

$$2G = U + Ve_3$$
$$2H = (U - Ve_3)e_1 .$$

and, when solved for U and V give

$$\begin{cases} U = G - He_1 \\ V = He_2 - Ge_3 \end{cases} \qquad (7.12)$$

Inserting (7 . 11) into Dirac's equation

$$\partial_0 \Psi + i \underline{\nabla} \Psi = \mu \Psi^* e_3$$

where $\underline{\nabla}$ is given by (7 . 7), and using the identity

$$i(1+ie_1) = -e_1(1+ie_1)$$

we can write (7 . 13) in the form

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(\partial_0 U - \underline{\nabla} U e_1)(1+ie_1) + \tfrac{1}{2}(\partial_0 V - \underline{\nabla} V e_1) e_3 (1-ie_1)$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\mu U e_3 (1+ie_1) + \tfrac{1}{2}\mu V e_3 e_3 (1-ie_1).$$

From the transformation equations (7 . 12) it is clear that equating the real and the imaginary parts of both sides in this equation is equivalent to equating the real coefficients of $(1+ie_1)$ and $(1-ie_1)$. Thus we obtain

$$\partial_0 U + \underline{\nabla} U e_1 = \mu U e_3 \qquad (7.14)$$

and the same equation holds for V. Multiplying the latter by i and adding it to (7 . 14) we get one form of Conway's equation which reads

$$\partial_0 (U+iV) + \underline{\nabla}(U+iV) e_1 = \mu (U+iV) e_3 .$$

In the same way the general equation

$$\partial_0 \Psi + i \underline{\nabla} \Psi = \mu \Psi^* e_3 + \lambda A \Psi e_3 \qquad (\lambda = e/\hbar c)$$

leads to the following equations for U and V.

$$\partial_0 U - \underline{\nabla} U e_1 - \mu U e_3 = -\lambda A_0 V + \lambda \underline{A} V e_1 \qquad (7.15)$$
$$\partial_0 V - \underline{\nabla} V e_1 - \mu V e_3 = \lambda A_0 U - \lambda \underline{A} U e_1 .$$

Hence the complex quaternion

$$\Phi = U + i V$$

satisfies the equation

$$(\partial_0 - i\lambda A_0)\Phi - (\underline{\nabla} - i\lambda \underline{A})\Phi e_1 = \mu \Phi e_3 .$$

Thus in Conway's quaternion formulation the electromagnetic potential is introduced in exactly the same way as in the matrix equation through the substitution

$$\hbar \partial_\nu \to \hbar \partial_\nu + ie A_\nu$$

We conclude that a solution of Conway's equation $\Phi = U + iV$ may be deduced from a solution of Watson's equation $\Psi = G + iH$ with the help of the relations (7 . 12).

§ 8. Two-Component Wave equations as degenerate forms of the general equation.

Let Ψ_s be a solution of Dirac's equation which is equal to its charge conjugate. We shall call it a self charge conjugate solution. We have

$$\Psi_s = \Psi_s\, ie_1$$

since Ψie_1 is the charge-conjugate of Ψ. From (7.10) it is clear that Ψ_s must be of the form

$$\Psi_s = \tfrac{1}{2} U_s (1 + ie_1) \qquad (8.1)$$

Hence the corresponding Conway function is

$$\Phi_s = U_s$$

since $V_s = 0$. From (7.14) it also follows that U_s satisfies the real quaternion equation

$$\partial_0 U_s - \nabla U_s e_1 - \mu U_s e_3 = 0 \qquad (8.2)$$

which is the same as the equation (7.13) for a free particle because it does not involve the electromagnetic potential. Now (8.2) being a real quaternion equation may be put in a 2 x 2 matrix form. Let us take

$$e_1 = \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix}, \quad e_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad e_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \qquad (8.3)$$

The first column of the matrix

$$U_S = u_0 + e_1 u_1 + e_2 u_2 + e_3 u_3$$

is represented by

$$u = \begin{pmatrix} u_0 + i u_1 \\ u_2 - i u_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Another form of (8.2) is

$$(\beta^\nu \partial_\nu + \mu) U_S = 0 \qquad (8.4)$$

where the operators β^ν are defined by

$$\beta^0 U_S = U_S e_3$$
$$\beta^n U_S = e_n U_S e_2 \qquad (n = 1, 2, 3)$$

and satisfy the commutation relations

$$\beta^\lambda \beta^\nu + \beta^\nu \beta^\lambda = -2 g^{\lambda\nu}.$$

$g^{\lambda\nu}$ is the metric tensor of special relativity. It will now be shown that (8.4) can also be written in the form

$$\gamma^\nu \partial_\nu U_S + \mu U_S^x = 0 \qquad (8.5)$$

where U_S^x is the complex conjugate of the matrix which represents the real quaternion U_S. We note that, as e_2 is real and e_1, e_3 are imaginary in the representation (8.3) we have

$$-e_2 U_S e_2 = u_0 - e_1 u_1 + e_2 u_2 - e_3 u_3 = U_S^x. \qquad (8.6)$$

Hence, multiplying (8.4) to the left by $-e_2$ and to the right by e_2 we find (8.5) where the operators γ^ν are defined by

$$\gamma^\nu U_S = -e_2 (\beta^\nu U_S) e_2 = (\beta^\nu U_S)^x.$$

It follows that

$$(\gamma^\lambda)^x \gamma^\nu U_s + (\gamma^\nu)^x \gamma^\lambda U_s = (\beta^\lambda \beta^\nu + \beta^\nu \beta^\lambda) U_s .$$

Thus the operators in (7.5) satisfy the commutation relations

$$(\gamma^\lambda)^x \gamma^\nu = (\gamma^\nu)^x \gamma^\lambda = -2 g^{\lambda\nu} . \qquad (8.7)$$

The first column of the matrix equation (7.5) gives

$$\gamma^\nu \partial_\nu u + \mu u^x = 0 \qquad (8.8)$$

where γ^ν now represents a matrix operating on the two components of u and corresponding to the operator $-e_2 (\beta^\nu U_s) e_2$. But (8.8) is just the two-component wave equation postulated by Jehle (1949) and (8.7) is identical with his commutation relations for the matrices γ^ν.

It is now clear that since the two-component equation is satisfied by the self charge-conjugate function, the electromagnetic field cannot be introduced in (8.8) through the familiar substitution

$$\partial_\nu \to \partial_\nu + i\lambda \phi_\nu \qquad (\lambda = e/\hbar c).$$

If this is done, then ϕ_ν no longer represents an electromagnetic potential, but as Serpe (1949) has shown directly corresponds to a pseudo-vector interaction.

C. Kilmister (1949, Phys.Rev.) has proposed another two component equation which, in quaternion notation reads

$$(i\partial_0 + \textstyle\sum e_m \partial_m)\phi = \mu e_2 \phi^x \qquad (8.9)$$

and where 2 x 2 matrix representations are employed for e_m and ϕ. However, it can be easily shown that (8.9) is in fact equivalent to two different equations of the type

(8.8). Using (8.6) we can replace ϕ^x in (8.9) by $-e_2 \phi e_2$. Hence we obtain the equation

$$(i\partial_0 + \Sigma e_n \partial_n)\phi = \mu \phi e_2 \qquad (8.10)$$

which, operated on by $-e_2(\ )e_2$ gives

$$i\partial_0 \phi^x - e_1 \partial_1 \phi^x + e_2 \partial_2 \phi^x - e_3 \partial_3 \phi^x = \mu \phi^x e_2 .$$

Remembering that e_2 is real and that e_1 and e_3 are imaginary, by taking the complex conjugate of this last equation we find

$$(-i\partial_0 + \Sigma e_n \partial_n)\phi = \mu \phi e_2 . \qquad (8.11)$$

Thus both (8.10) and (8.11) follow from (8.9).

Addition and subtraction of (7.10) and (7.11) also gives

$$\partial_0 \phi = 0 \qquad (8.12)$$

$$\underline{\nabla} \phi = \mu \phi e_2 . \qquad (8.13)$$

Hence Kilmister's equation (8.9) cannot be physically significant since the time variable is automatically eliminated from it. The two columns of (8.10) written separately give rise to two equations of the type (8.8) which differ by the sign of their first terms only.

The equation (8.10) is related to Watson's equation

$$(\partial_0 + i\underline{\nabla})\underline{\Psi} = \mu \underline{\Psi}^x e_3$$

which is transformed into

$$(i\partial_0 + \underline{\nabla})\underline{\Psi} = \mu \underline{\Psi}^x e_3 \qquad (8.14)$$

by the substitution

$$\underline{\Psi} \rightarrow \underline{\Psi}^x e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}} e^{e_4 \frac{\pi}{4}} .$$

Now, under the time reflection $x_0 \to -x_0$, ψ goes over into ψ^*. Hence the real part of ψ which we shall denote by ϕ is the self time-conjugate solution of (8.14) and satisfies the equations (8.12) and (8.13). This leads us to another remark made by Jekle. He states incorrectly that the two-component wave equation cannot be made covariant with respect to reflections. But we have shown that Jekle's equation is equivalent to (8.2). Under the time reflection $x_0 \to -x_0$, U_s is changed into $U_s e_2$. Hence (8.8) is covariant with respect to this transformation, but not with respect to charge conjugation. On the other hand Kilmister's equation (8.11) is covariant with respect to charge conjugation but not with respect to a time reflection. Thus both are degenerate cases of the general equation which is covariant with respect to both time reflection and charge conjugation.

We conclude that two-component wave equations can only have physical significance if they represent neutral particles of spin $\frac{1}{2}$.

§ 9. Introduction of an orthogonal frame of reference. The de Broglie vectors.

In § 4 we have seen that if C is a quaternion which transforms according to the law

$$C' = \Gamma C$$

when the coordinates are subject to the orthogonal transformation

$$dX' = \Gamma\, dX\, \Gamma^{\dagger}$$

then the four hermitian quaternions $C I_\mu C^{\dagger}$ represent four four-vectors mutually orthogonal in Lorentz' sense. But from (5.4) Ψ has the same transformation properties as C, so that an orthogonal frame of reference is defined by the four hermitian quaternions

$$J = \Psi\Psi^{\dagger} \tag{9.1}$$

$$-S = \Psi i e_3 \Psi^{\dagger} \tag{9.2}$$

$$-U = \Psi i e_1 \Psi^{\dagger} \tag{9.3}$$

$$-V = \Psi i e_2 \Psi^{\dagger} \tag{9.4}$$

J is a time-like four-vector the time component of which is positive definite. In a frame of reference where J is reduced to its scalar component, Ψ may be taken as a scalar quaternion. In such a frame of reference S, U and V would then reduce to their components in the e_3, e_1 and e_2

directions respectively. Thus they are seen to be space-like four-vectors. We now want to show that J represents the current (or probability) density four-vector while S corresponds to the spin density four-vector. The vectors U and V which are orthogonal to each other and orthogonal to the current and spin vectors are related to a complex four-vector introduced by de Broglie (1940, p.136) and for that reason will be called the de Broglie four-vectors. The space-like vectors S, U, V are also pseudo-vectors since under a space reflection the transformation law (5.5) implies that

$$-S' = \Psi^{\times} i\varepsilon_1, \quad \bar{\Psi} = S^{\times}$$

that is, the scalar part of S changes its sign under this transformation. The same proof holds for the de Broglie vectors.

We write

$$J = j^0 + i\varepsilon_1 j^1 + i\varepsilon_2 j^2 + i\varepsilon_3 j^3 = I_\nu j^\nu .$$

From (1.11) it follows that

$$j^\nu = \Psi^\dagger . \bar{I}^\nu \Psi = \Psi^\dagger . I_\nu \Psi$$

and the code (2.11) in conjunction with (2.16) gives

$$j^0 = \Psi^\dagger . \Psi = \psi^\times . \psi, \quad j^n = \Psi^\dagger . i\varepsilon_n \Psi = \psi^\times \alpha_n \psi \qquad (9.5)$$

so that the functions j_ν represent the components of the current four-vector.

Likewise we can express the components s^ν of the space-like vector S by means of the column matrix ψ. From (2.11), (2.12) and (2.16) we obtain

$$s^0 = -\Psi^\dagger . \Psi i e_3 = \psi^x . i\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\psi$$
$$s^1 = -\Psi^\dagger . i\alpha_1 \Psi i e_3 = \psi^x . i\alpha_2\alpha_3\psi$$
$$s^2 = -\Psi^\dagger . i e_2 \Psi i e_3 = \psi^x . i\alpha_3\alpha_1\psi$$
$$s^3 = -\Psi^\dagger . i e_3 \Psi i e_3 = \psi^x . i\alpha_1\alpha_2\psi$$

or

$$s^\nu = \psi^x . \sigma_\nu \psi \qquad (9.6)$$

where $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_3$ are the spin operators and $\sigma_0 = i\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3$. Thus s^ν are the components of the spin density pseudo-vector.

Now the particular gauge transformation

$$\Psi \to \Psi \exp(e_3 \tfrac{\pi}{4})$$

transforms U into V, so that we need only consider the physical meaning of U. From (6.9) we infer that in the field free case e = 0, the charge conjugate function $\Psi_+ i e_1$ of the positive energy solution Ψ_+ represents a negative energy solution. Hence we can write

$$-U = \Psi_+ i e_1 \Psi^\dagger = \Psi_- \Psi_+^\dagger = \Psi_+ \Psi_-^\dagger .$$

Thus U is connected with the transition probabilities from positive to negative energy states. De Broglie in his "theory of light" considered the complex densities

$$w_0 = \varphi^x . \psi \quad , \quad w_n = -\varphi^x . \alpha_n \psi \qquad (9.7)$$

where $\varphi = -i\alpha_2\beta\psi^x$ is the charge conjugate function. Now it is easily seen that the real and imaginary parts of w_μ

give the components of the vectors U and V. To show this we first notice that the quaternion

$$\Psi i e_2 = -(\Psi i e_1) e_3$$

corresponds to the column matrix $i\varphi$. Hence

$$u^0 = -\Psi^\dagger . \Psi i e_1 = -\mathcal{R}(\varphi^x . \varphi)$$
$$u^n = -\Psi^\dagger . i e_n \Psi i e_1 = -\mathcal{R}(\varphi^x . \alpha_n \varphi)$$
$$v^0 = -\Psi^\dagger . \Psi i e_2 = -\mathcal{R}(i\varphi^x . \varphi) = -i\mathcal{I}(\varphi^x . \varphi)$$
$$v^n = -\Psi^\dagger . i e_n \Psi i e_2 = -\mathcal{R}(i\varphi^x . \alpha_n \varphi) = -i\mathcal{I}(\varphi^x . \alpha_n \varphi)$$

so that the complex combinations

$$-(u^0 + i v^0) = (\varphi^x . \varphi)^x = w^0$$
$$-(u^n + i v^n) = (\varphi^x . \alpha_n \varphi)^x = (\varphi . \alpha_n^x \varphi^x)^x = -w_n = w^n$$

are seen to be identical with the contravariant components of de Broglie's complex vector.

When the field is present, however, the transition probabilities from positive to negative energy states are determined by the four-vector

$$\Psi_- . \Psi^\dagger = \Psi(-e) i e_1 \Psi^\dagger(e)$$

which is different from the vector

$$U = \Psi(e) i e_1 \Psi^\dagger(e).$$

Thus our physical interpretation of de Broglie's vectors as giving transition probabilities between positive and negative energy states breaks down in the general case. From the geometric point of view U and V are two space-like vectors which together with the current density and spin density four-vectors form an orthogonal frame of reference. The considerations of § 4, shown that the vectors J, S, U, V are all invariant under the pseudo-gauge transformation (6.3). But

only the current density vector J and the spin density are gauge invariant. The gauge transformation 6.2 transforms a linear combination of the de Broglie vectors U and V into another linear combination of the same vectors.

CHAPTER III.

New divergence equations and algebraic identities between tensors attached to a particle of spin ½.

§10. Divergence equations satisfied by the basis vectors of the orthogonal frame.

In this section we propose to show that the quaternion method of deriving the equation for the conservation of probability gives simultaneously three other divergence equations of which one is Uhlenbeck & Laporte's equation and the other two concern the de Broglie vectors introduced in §9.

Multiplying the wave equation

$$\hbar D\bar{\Psi} = (m_0 c\,\bar{\Psi}^{\times} + e\bar{A}\bar{\Psi})e_3$$

to the left by $\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}$, and the hermitian conjugate equation

$$\hbar\,\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}\mathcal{D} = -e_3(m_0 c\,\bar{\Psi} + e\,\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}\bar{A})$$

to the right by $\bar{\Psi}$, and adding them together we obtain

$$\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}D\bar{\Psi} + \bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}\mathcal{D}\bar{\Psi} = m_0 c(\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}\bar{\Psi}^{\times} - \bar{\Psi}\bar{\Psi})e_3 + e(\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}\bar{A}\bar{\Psi}e_3 - e_3\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}\bar{A}\bar{\Psi}). \quad (10.1)$$

Here we have employed the notation

$$\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}\mathcal{D} = \partial_0\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger} + \sum \partial_m\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}ie_m = (\partial_\nu\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger})\bar{I}^{\nu}. \quad (10.2)$$

If we multiply the quaternion equation (10.1) scalarly

by $\frac{1}{2}I_\nu$ we obtain four scalar equations. By (1.10) we find

$$D.\Psi\bar{\Psi}^\dagger = 0 \tag{10.3}$$

$$\hbar\, D.\Psi i e_1 \bar{\Psi}^\dagger = 2e(\Psi i e_2 \bar{\Psi}^\dagger).\bar{A} \tag{10.4}$$

$$\hbar\, D.\Psi i e_2 \bar{\Psi}^\dagger = -2e(\Psi i e_1 \bar{\Psi}^\dagger).\bar{A} \tag{10.5}$$

$$\hbar\, D.\Psi i e_3 \bar{\Psi}^\dagger = m_0 c\, i(\Psi\bar{\Psi} - \Psi^* \bar{\Psi}^\dagger) \tag{10.6}$$

From (9.1) and (9.5) it is seen that (10.3) may be written as

$$\partial_\nu j^\nu = 0$$

and expresses the conservation of the probability density.

Let
$$\Psi\bar{\Psi} = \bar{\Psi}\Psi = \omega_1 + i\omega_2 \tag{10.7}$$

where ω_1 and ω_2 are two real scalars. They are seen to be invariant under the orthogonal transformation (5.4). The space reflection (5.5.) leaves ω_1 invariant but changes the sign of ω_2. We conclude that ω_2 is a pseudo invariant scalar (also called pseudoscalar). We now give the expressions of ω_1 and ω_2 in Dirac's matrix theory. Taking the complex conjugate of (10.7) and using (2.15) together with (2.16) we obtain

$$\Psi^\dagger\bar{\Psi}^* = \psi^*.\beta\psi - i\psi^*.\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\beta\psi .$$

Thus
$$\omega_1 = \psi^*.\beta\psi \tag{10.8}$$

and
$$\omega_2 = \psi^*.\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\beta\psi \tag{10.9}$$

are identical with the scalar and pseudo-scalar densities attached to a Dirac particle. The equation (10.6) now takes the form

$$-\hbar\, D.S = -2m_0 c\,\omega_2$$

or
$$\hbar\,\partial_\nu s^\nu = 2m_0 c\,\omega_2 . \tag{10.10}$$

and may be recognized as the divergence equation for the spin density vector first given by Uhlenbeck & Laporte (1931).

Finally the equations (10.4) and (10.5) give the divergencies of the space-like de Broglie vectors U and V defined by (9.3) and (9.4). They can be written in the form

$$\hbar\, \partial_\nu u^\nu = 2e A_\nu v^\nu \tag{10.11}$$

$$\hbar\, \partial_\nu v^\nu = -2e A_\nu u^\nu \tag{10.12}$$

We see that unlike (10.3) or (10.10) these equations depend on the electromagnetic potential. Using (9.8) we find the divergence equation satisfied by de Broglie's complex vector

$$(\hbar\, \partial_\nu + 2ie A_\nu) w^\nu = 0 \tag{10.13}$$

In the absence of field the divergence of de Broglie's vector vanishes, a result already found by de Broglie. The equation (10.13) generalizes this result to the case a field is present. Moreover for the free electron we shall see that ω_2 vanishes. Hence in this case the four basis vectors of the orthogonal frame introduced in §9 have vanishing divergences. If this orthogonal frame is used to define an affine space-time of distant parallelism we shall see in Chapter VIII that the divergences of its basis vectors vanish if the contracted torsion tensor in this space-time vanishes. This gives a clue to a possible geometric interpretation of both the wave function and the electromagnetic potential. We leave the discussion of this question to the final chapter.

§11. The same divergence equations in a general field.

Besides the electromagnetic field there are other types of fields (scalar, pseudoscalar, pseudovectorial) with which a general particle of spin $\frac{1}{2}$ may interact. These more general interactions occur, for instance, in the case of nucleons. It is also possible that a Pauli interaction term due to an anomalous magnetic moment may be present. We have already seen how to express vector, pseudovector, scalar and pseudoscalar interactions in quaternion form. The effect of an anomalous magnetic moment on the quaternion wave equation will now be examined.

The relation between the field quantities and the electromagnetic potential, namely

$$\underline{E} = -\partial_0 \underline{A} - \underline{\nabla} A_0 \quad , \quad \underline{H} = \operatorname{curl} \underline{A} = \underline{\nabla} \wedge \underline{A}$$

assume the quaternion form

$$\nabla (DA) = \underline{F}^{\times}$$

where $\underline{F} = i\underline{E} - \underline{H}$

When the coordinates are subject to the constant orthogonal transformation (4.7) we have

$$\bar{D}' = \Gamma \bar{D} \Gamma^{\dagger} \quad , \quad \bar{A}' = \Gamma^{\wedge} \bar{A} \bar{\Gamma}$$

so that the transformation law for $\underline{F}$

$$\underline{F}' = \Gamma \underline{F} \bar{\Gamma}$$

is the same as (4.9) for a general six-vector. Hence the product $\underline{F}^{\times}\Psi^{\times}$ transforms like $\Psi^{\times}$ and a term of the form $l e \underline{F}^{\times}\Psi^{\times}$ may be added to the right-hand side of (6.1) without altering the relativistic invariance of Dirac's equation. In matrix form this additional term turns out to be equivalent to a Pauli interaction. (cf. Frenkel, p. 348) .

If we also assume a scalar invariant potential $f_1\Omega_1$ and a pseudo scalar potential $f_2\Omega_2$, Dirac's equation with the most general interaction terms may be written as

$$\begin{aligned} k D\Psi = m_0 c\Psi^{\times} e_3 + (f_1\Omega_1 + i f_2\Omega_2)\Psi^{\times} e_3 \\ + e l \underline{F}^{\times}\Psi^{\times} + e\bar{A}\Psi e_3 + i\kappa\bar{B}\Psi . \end{aligned} \qquad (11.1)$$

We note that the charge conjugate function $\Psi i e_1$ satisfies the same equation with e changed into -e.

The extension of the divergence equation (10.1) to this general case is immediate. Starting from (11.1) we proceed as in §10, and instead of (10.1) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} k(\Psi^{\dagger} D\Psi + \Psi^{\dagger} D\Psi) = -2 m_0 c\,\omega_2 i e_3 - 2(f_1\Omega_1\omega_2 - f_2\Omega_2\omega_1) i e_3 \\ + e l(\Psi^{\dagger}\underline{F}^{\times}\Psi^{\times} - \bar{\Psi}\underline{F}\Psi) + e(\Psi^{\dagger}\bar{A}\Psi e_3 - e_3\Psi^{\dagger}\bar{A}\Psi) \end{aligned}$$

where ω_1 and ω_2 are given by (10.7) or (10.8) and (10.9). This equation is equivalent to the four divergence equations

$$D.\Psi\Psi^{\dagger} = 0 \qquad (11.2)$$

$$k\, D.\Psi i e_1\Psi^{\dagger} = 2e\Psi i e_2\Psi^{\dagger}.\bar{A} + e l i(\underline{f}^{\times}.\Psi^{\times} e_1\Psi^{\dagger} - \underline{f}.\Psi e_1\bar{\Psi}^{\dagger}) \qquad (11.3)$$

$$k\, D.\Psi i e_2\Psi^{\dagger} = -2e\Psi i e_1\Psi^{\dagger}.\bar{A} + e l i(\underline{F}^{\times}.\Psi^{\times} e_2\Psi^{\dagger} - \underline{f}.\Psi e_2\bar{\Psi}) \qquad (11.4)$$

$$\begin{aligned} k\, D.\Psi i e_3\Psi^{\dagger} = -2(m_0 c\omega_2 - f_1\omega_1\Omega_2 + f_2\Omega_2\omega_1) \\ + e l i(\underline{F}^{\times}.\Psi e_3\Psi^{\dagger\times} - \underline{f}.\Psi e_3\bar{\Psi}) . \end{aligned} \qquad (11.5)$$

Here (11.2) again expresses the conservation of the probability density. In order to put the remaining equations in tensor form we must first give matrix representations of the three purely vectorial quaternions

$$\underline{M} = \Psi e_3 \bar{\Psi} \quad , \quad \underline{M}' = \Psi e_1 \bar{\Psi} \quad , \quad \underline{M}'' = \Psi e_2 \bar{\Psi}$$

which clearly represent six-vectors, since they obey the law (4.9) under an orthogonal transformation. Let $F_{\mu\nu}$ denote the components of the antisymmetrical tensor which corresponds to the field six-vector. We can write

$$\underline{F} = \tfrac{1}{2} \bar{I}^{\mu} I^{\nu} F_{\mu\nu}$$

with the notation (4.4). Similarly writing

$$\underline{M} = \underline{P} - \underline{N} = \Psi e_3 \bar{\Psi} = \tfrac{1}{2} \bar{I}^{\rho} I^{\sigma} M_{\rho\sigma}$$

we find that

$$P_n = M_{0n} = \mathcal{R}(i e_n . \underline{M}) = \psi^{\times} . i\alpha_n \beta \psi \qquad (11.6)$$

since

$$\mathcal{R}(i e_n . \underline{M}) = \mathcal{R}(i e_n . \underline{M})^{\times} = -\mathcal{R}(\Psi^{\dagger} . i e_n \Psi^{\times}_{e_3}),$$

and also that

$$N_p = -M_{mn} = \mathcal{R}(e_p . \underline{M})^{\times} = -\mathcal{R}(\Psi^{\dagger} . i e_p \Psi^{\times} i e_3) \qquad (11.7)$$

since

$$\mathcal{R}(e_p . \underline{M}) = \mathcal{R}(e_p . \underline{M})^{\times} = -\mathcal{R}(\Psi^{\dagger} . i e_p \Psi^{\times} i e_3).$$

The index n runs from 1 to 3, (m, n, p) is a circular permutation of (1, 2, 3) and the matrices

$$\sigma_p = i\alpha_m \alpha_n$$

are the spin operators. As before ψ is the column matrix which corresponds to the quaternion Ψ.

The formulae (11.6) and (11.7) show that $\underline{P}$ and $\underline{N}$ are respectively the electric and the magnetic moment densities associated with the Dirac particle.

With the help of the completely antisymmetrical tensor of rank four $\varepsilon^{\lambda\mu\nu\rho}$ which is equal to 1 or -1 according to whether $(\lambda\mu\nu\rho)$ is an even or an odd permutation of $(0,1,2,3)$ and equal to zero otherwise, we obtain

$$-i(\underline{f}.\Psi e_3\bar{\Psi} - \underline{f}^*.\Psi^* e_3\Psi^\dagger) = -2(\underline{H}.\underline{P} + \underline{E}.\underline{N}) = -\tfrac{1}{2}\varepsilon^{\lambda\mu\nu\rho}F_{\mu\nu}M_{\nu\rho} \quad (11.8)$$

so that (11.5) is equivalent to the tensor equation.

$$\hbar\,\partial_\nu s^\nu = 2(m_0 c\,\omega_2 - f_1\Omega_1\omega_2 + f_2\Omega_2\omega_1) + \tfrac{1}{2}\varepsilon^{\lambda\mu\nu\rho}F_{\lambda\mu}M_{\nu\rho}$$

with the notations of §§ 9 and 10. This equation is a generalization of Uhlenbeck and Laporte's equation and contains the pseudo invariant formed by means of the electromagnetic field tensor $F_{\mu\nu}$ and the electromagnetic moment tensor $M_{\nu\rho}$.

Similarly we find that the tensor components of the six-vectors $\underline{M}'$ and $\underline{M}''$ are given by the complex equations

$$M'_{0n} + iM''_{0n} = \psi^*.i\alpha_n\beta\,\psi \quad (11.10)$$

$$-(M'_{mn} + iM''_{mn}) = \psi^*.\sigma_p\beta\,\psi \quad (11.11)$$

where ψ is the charge conjugate of ψ. In other words the six-vectors $\underline{M}'$ and $\underline{M}''$ are connected with the expectation values of the electromagnetic moment operators for the transitions between positive and negative energy states in the case of a free Dirac particle. The equations (11.3) and (11.4)

can be put in tensor notation in the same way as the equation (11.5). Hence the divergences of de Broglie's vectors in the case of a general field are given by

$$\hbar\, \partial_\nu u^\nu = 2e v^\nu A_\nu + \tfrac{1}{2} e l\, \varepsilon^{\lambda\mu\nu\rho} F_{\lambda\mu} M'_{\nu\rho} \qquad (11.12)$$

$$\hbar\, \partial_\nu v^\nu = -2e u^\nu A_\nu + \tfrac{1}{2} e l\, \varepsilon^{\lambda\mu\nu\rho} F_{\lambda\mu} M''_{\nu\rho}. \qquad (11.13)$$

It may be noted that the pseudo vector B does not appear in any of the divergence equations. The scalar and the pseudo-scalar potentials are only present in (11.9) and the electromagnetic potential enters only the equations (11.12) and (11.13). The complex six vector given by (11.10) and (11.11) has been first considered by de Broglie in an attempt to interpret it as describing the field of a photon. (A photon ~~for de Broglie~~ according to de Broglie, is composed of a Dirac particle and an antiparticle.)

§12. Algebraic Identities.

We now proceed to establish some algebraic identities which hold between various tensorial quantities that have arisen in the preceding sections, namely the scalar ω_1, and the pseudoscalar ω_2 defined by

$$\Psi\bar{\Psi} = \omega_1 + i\,\omega_2$$

the four four-vectors

$$J = \Psi\Psi^\dagger \;,\quad S = -\Psi i e_3 \Psi^\dagger \;,\quad U = \Psi i e_1 \Psi^\dagger \;,\quad V = \Psi i e_2 \Psi^\dagger$$

and the three six-vectors

$$\underline{M} = \Psi e_3 \bar{\Psi} \;,\quad \underline{M}' = \Psi e_1 \bar{\Psi} \;,\quad \underline{M}'' = \Psi e_2 \bar{\Psi} .$$

All these tensorial quantities are expressed by means of Dirac's column matrix ψ in the formulae (10.8), (10.9) for ω_1 and ω_2, (9.5) for J, (9.6) for S, (9.8) for U and V, (11.6) and (11.7) for $\underline{M}$ and finally (11.9) and (11.10) for $\underline{M}'$ and $\underline{M}''$. It is obvious in quaternion notation that the vectors J, S, U, V have all the same norm. This property was known for J and S and was pointed out for U and V in the case of a free electron by de Broglie. Thus we write

$$\mathcal{N}(J) = -\mathcal{N}(S) = -\mathcal{N}(U) = -\mathcal{N}(V) = (\Psi\bar{\Psi})(\Psi\bar{\Psi})^* = \omega_1^2 + \omega_2^2 \qquad (12.1)$$

The norms of the six vectors $\underline{M}$, $\underline{M}'$ and $\underline{M}''$ are also obviously equal.

$$\mathcal{N}(\underline{M}) = \mathcal{N}(\underline{M}') = \mathcal{N}(\underline{M}'') = (\Psi\bar{\Psi})^2 = \omega_1^2 - \omega_2^2 + 2i\,\omega_1\omega_2 \;. \qquad (12.2)$$

The orthogonality of the basis vectors is expressed by

$$\underline{J}\cdot\underline{\bar{S}} = \underline{J}\cdot\underline{\bar{U}} = \underline{J}\cdot\underline{\bar{V}} = \underline{S}\cdot\underline{\bar{U}} = \underline{S}\cdot\underline{\bar{V}} = \underline{U}\cdot\underline{\bar{V}} = 0 \qquad (12.3)$$

The six-vectors are also orthogonal since

$$\underline{M}\cdot\underline{M}' = \underline{M}\cdot\underline{M}'' = \underline{M}'\cdot\underline{M}'' = 0 . \qquad (12.4)$$

The quaternion identities we have derived can also be expressed in tensor form. The relations (12.1) become

$$J^\nu J_\nu = -S^\nu S_\nu = -U^\nu U_\nu = -V^\nu V_\nu = \omega_1^2 + \omega_2^2 .$$

Now we have

$$\mathcal{N}(\underline{M}) = \underline{M}\,\bar{\underline{M}} = -(i\underline{P}-\underline{N})^2 = \underline{N}\cdot\underline{N} - \underline{P}\cdot\underline{P} - 2i(\underline{P}\cdot\underline{N})$$

From (11.8) it follows that

$$-2\,\underline{P}\cdot\underline{N} = -\frac{1}{4}\,\varepsilon^{\lambda\mu\nu\rho}M_{\lambda\mu}M_{\nu\rho} .$$

We also find that

$$\underline{N}\cdot\underline{N} - \underline{P}\cdot\underline{P} = \frac{1}{2}M^{\alpha\beta}M_{\alpha\beta} .$$

Hence the tensor equations which correspond to (12.2) are

$$\frac{1}{2}M^{\alpha\beta}M_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2}M'^{\alpha\beta}M'_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2}M''^{\alpha\beta}M''_{\alpha\beta} = \omega_1^2 - \omega_2^2$$

$$\frac{1}{2}M^{\alpha\beta}\tilde{M}_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2}M'^{\alpha\beta}\tilde{M}'_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2}M''^{\alpha\beta}\tilde{M}''_{\alpha\beta} = 2\omega_1\omega_2 ,$$

where we have introduced the dual tensors $\tilde{M}_{\alpha\beta}, \tilde{M}'_{\alpha\beta}, \tilde{M}''_{\alpha\beta}$.

For example $\tilde{M}_{\alpha\beta}$ is defined by

$$\tilde{M}_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2}\,\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\rho\sigma}M^{\rho\sigma} .$$

The orthogonality relations (12.3) take the form

$$J^\nu S_\nu = J^\nu U_\nu = J^\nu V_\nu = S^\nu U_\nu = S^\nu V_\nu = U^\nu V_\nu = 0$$

and to (12.4) correspond the two sets of relations

$$M^{\alpha\beta}M'_{\alpha\beta} = M^{\alpha\beta}M''_{\alpha\beta} = M'^{\alpha\beta}M''_{\alpha\beta} = 0$$

and

$$M^{\alpha\beta}\tilde{M}'_{\alpha\beta} = M^{\alpha\beta}\tilde{M}''_{\alpha\beta} = M'^{\alpha\beta}\tilde{M}''_{\alpha\beta} = 0 .$$

Now we pass to another category of identities obtained by multiplying the various quaternions under consideration among themselves. Thus if we multiply the four-vectors we find

$$-iJ\bar{S} = U\bar{V} = (\omega_1 - i\omega_2)\,\underline{M} \qquad (12.5)$$
$$-iJ\bar{U} = V\bar{S} = (\omega_1 - i\omega_2)\,\underline{M}'$$
$$-iJ\bar{V} = S\bar{U} = (\omega_1 - i\omega_2)\,\underline{M}''$$

and multiplying the six vectors among themselves we have

$$\underline{M}\,\underline{M}' = (\omega_1 + i\omega_2)\,\underline{M}''$$
$$\underline{M}'\,\underline{M}'' = (\omega_1 + i\omega_2)\,\underline{M}$$
$$\underline{M}''\,\underline{M} = (\omega_1 + i\omega_2)\,\underline{M}'.$$

It may be noticed that apart from the factor $(\omega_1 + i\omega_2)$ these last equations have the same form as the multiplication rules for e_1, e_2 and e_3.

Finally the multiplication of six-vectors by four-vectors gives the identities

$$\underline{M}'V = -i\underline{M}J = -\underline{M}''U = (\omega_1 + i\omega_2)S$$
$$\underline{M}''S = -i\underline{M}'J = -\underline{M}V = (\omega_1 + i\omega_2)U$$
$$\underline{M}U = -i\underline{M}''J = -\underline{M}'S = (\omega_1 + i\omega_2)V$$
$$\underline{M}S = \underline{M}'U = \underline{M}''V = i(\omega_1 + i\omega_2)J \qquad (12.6)$$

The equations of this category are somewhat more difficult to translate into tensor equations than the identities considered in the beginning of this section. A general technique for transforming any invariant quaternion

equation into an equivalent tensor equation in a general system of coordinate will be developed in Chapter 6. Pending this investigation we shall give two examples to show how the quaternion identities can be put in tensor form.

We have

$$i\underline{M} = \tfrac{1}{2}\, i\bar{I}^{\lambda}I^{\mu}M_{\lambda\mu} = i(i\underline{P} - \underline{N}) = \tfrac{1}{2}\,\bar{I}^{\lambda}I^{\mu}\tilde{M}_{\lambda\mu}.$$

Hence one of the equations (12.5) namely

$$-iJ\bar{S} = (\omega_1 - i\omega_2)\underline{M}$$

can be written

$$f_\lambda s_\mu - f_\mu s_\lambda = \omega_2 M_{\lambda\mu} + \omega_1 \tilde{M}_{\lambda\mu},$$

and the other equation

$$U\bar{V} = (\omega_1 - i\omega_2)\underline{M}$$

takes the form

$$u_\lambda v_\mu - u_\mu v_\lambda = \omega_1 M_{\lambda\mu} - \omega_2 \tilde{M}_{\lambda\mu}.$$

Similarly one of the identities (12.6) which reads

$$\underline{M}\, S = -(\omega_2 - i\omega_1)\, J$$

splits into two tensor equations, namely

$$M^{\alpha\beta}s_\beta = -\omega_2 f^\alpha$$

and $$\tilde{M}^{\alpha\beta}s_\beta = -\omega_1 f^\alpha.$$

Among the identities derived in this section, those involving only the gauge invariant quantities J, S and $\underline{M}$, the pseudoscalar ω_2 and the scalar ω_1 are well known and have been first derived by Pauli and by Kofink (1940). They were expressed in tensor form by Petiau (1946). All the other identities are new and they illustrate the power of the quaternion methods.

§13. Equations satisfied by the de Broglie vectors in the case of a free particle.

In this section we start by solving the wave equation for a free electron and evaluating the various tensorial quantities considered in the preceding sections. Then we shall show that the de Broglie vectors corresponding to plane wave solutions satisfy equations of Proca's type.

We seek a solution of Dirac's equation

$$i D\Psi = m_0 c \Psi^* e_3$$

of the form

$$\Psi = \chi \exp(e_3 \lambda / i)$$

where χ is a constant quaternion and

$$\lambda = Et - p_1 x_1 - p_2 x_2 - p_3 x_3 = p^\nu x_\nu = P \cdot \bar{X} .$$

The equation satisfied by χ is identical with the algebraic form of the wave equation (5.2) and reads

$$(D\lambda)\chi = \bar{P}\chi = m_0 c \chi^* .$$

Hence χ must satisfy the two conditions

$$P = m_0 c \, \chi (\chi^*)^{-1} \quad \text{and} \quad \chi \bar{\chi} = \text{real} .$$

In particular if we put

$$\chi = e^{\frac{1}{2} i \underline{\pi} \alpha} R$$

where R denotes any real quaternion, from (5.9) we obtain

$$E = m_0 c^2 \cosh\alpha \quad \text{and} \quad \underline{p} = \underline{\pi} \, m_0 c \sinh\alpha \qquad (13.1)$$

The plane wave solution of (5.10) which corresponds to the values (13.1) of the energy and the momentum is therefore given by

$$\Psi = e^{\frac{1}{2} i \underline{\pi} \alpha} R \exp\{e_3 m_0 c (ct \cosh\alpha - \underline{r} \cdot \underline{\pi} \sinh\alpha)/\hbar\}. \qquad (13.2)$$

We can normalize Ψ in a cube of volume l^3 so that

$$(\Psi^\dagger . \Psi) l^3 = 1 .$$

Since the probability vector J is

$$J = \Psi \Psi^\dagger = R \bar{R} \exp(i \underline{\pi} \alpha)$$

the normalization condition becomes

$$R \bar{R} \cosh\alpha = l^{-3}. \qquad (13.3)$$

The invariant ω_1 and the pseudo-invariant ω_2 are given by

$$\Psi \bar{\Psi} = \omega_1 + i\omega_2 = R \bar{R} .$$

Hence ω_2 vanishes identically. The normalization condition (13.3) determines ω_1 and we find

$$\omega_1 = m_0 c^2 / (E l^3) .$$

The spin density vector

$$S = -\Psi i e_3 \Psi^\dagger = -\chi i e_3 \chi^\dagger$$

is seen to be constant. But the de Broglie vectors U and V are functions of position in space-time. They are given by

$$-U = \Psi i e_1 \Psi^\dagger = \chi e^{e_3 \lambda/\hbar} i e_1 e^{-e_3 \lambda/\hbar} \chi^\dagger$$
$$-V = \Psi i e_2 \Psi^\dagger = \chi e^{e_3 \lambda/\hbar} i e_2 e^{-e_3 \lambda/\hbar} \chi^\dagger .$$

The electromagnetic moment density six vector

$$\underline{M} = \Psi e_3 \bar{\Psi} = \chi e_3 \bar{\chi}$$

is also constant unlike the six-vectors

$$\underline{M}' = \Psi e_1 \bar{\Psi} = \chi e^{e_3 \lambda/\hbar} e_1 e^{-e_3 \lambda/\hbar} \bar{\chi}$$

and

$$\underline{M}'' = \Psi e_2 \bar{\Psi} = \chi e^{e_3 \lambda/\hbar} e_2 e^{-e_3 \lambda/\hbar} \bar{\chi}$$

which depend on the position coordinates.

We now wish to show that the four-vectors U, V and the six-vectors $\underline{M}'$, $\underline{M}''$ constructed from plane wave solutions satisfy equations of Proca's type. Remembering that

$$D\lambda = m_0 c\, \chi^* \chi^{-1}$$

we get

$$\hbar\, DU = -(D\lambda)\chi e^{2e_3\lambda/\hbar} e_3 i e_1 \chi^\dagger = -2 m_0 c\, i \underline{M}''^{x}$$

$$\hbar\, D\underline{M}' = 2(D\lambda)\chi e^{2e_3\lambda/\hbar} e_3 e_2 \bar{\chi} = 2 m_0 c\, i U^{x}.$$

Hence

$$\hbar^2 D\bar{D} U = -4 m_0^2 c^2 U. \qquad (13.4)$$

In the same way we find

$$\hbar\, DV = 2 m_0 c\, i \underline{M}'^{x}$$

and $\hbar^2 D\bar{D} V = -4 m_0^2 c^2 V.$ (13.5)

The equations (13.4) and (13.5) show that if the pseudo-vectors U and V correspond to plane wave solutions they obey second order wave equations associated with a particle of mass $2m_0$ and spin 1. Complex equations of a similar form were first derived by de Broglie. The question whether the Maxwell equations can be solved by means of plane wave solutions of an equation associated with a particle of spin $\frac{1}{2}$ will be answered in the next section.

§14. A form of Dirac's equation involving a constant space-like vector. A new equation for a particle of rest mass 0 and spin ½. Application to the plane wave solutions of Maxwell's equations.

In the last section we have seen that the pseudovector w vanishes for plane wave solutions of the field free Dirac equation since in this case the norm of the wave function is real. Although for a general solution this may not be true we can always transform the wave function by means of the pseudo gauge transformation (6.3) as to make its norm real. Such a transformation will not affect the basis vector of the orthogonal frame of reference introduced in §9. If we assume that only the orthogonal system has a physical significance (and some arguments supporting this view will be put forward in §31) then we can always assume that the pseudo-invariant ω_2 can be made to vanish and the spin-density vector to satisfy the conservation equation. Thus we come to the conclusion that for a free electron the wave function satisfies the divergence equation

$$\Psi^\dagger D\Psi + \Psi^\dagger \mathcal{D} \Psi = 0 \qquad (14.1)$$

with the help of the supplementary condition that the norm of Ψ is real. We now look for a linear equation of the form

$$D\Psi = \Psi^* L \qquad (14.2)$$

which leads to (14.1) assuming that $\mathcal{N}(\Psi)$ is real.

From (14.2) we obtain

$$\Psi^\dagger D\Psi + \Psi^\dagger \bar{D}\Psi = \Psi^\dagger \Psi^* L + \bar{\Psi}^* \Psi L^\dagger .$$

Hence if L is an antihermitian quaternion (14.1) is satisfied since Φ_2 vanishes. Moreover if L is constant the second order equation derived from (14.2) reads

$$\bar{D} D\Psi = \Psi L^* L = -\Psi \bar{L} L . \qquad (14.3)$$

This last equation shows that if the norm of L is positive we can put

$$\bar{L} L = m_0^2 c^2 / \hbar^2 = \mu^2 \qquad (14.4)$$

and (14.3) becomes the second order wave equation for a particle of mass m . We can also put

$$L = \mu T$$

where

$$T = -T^\dagger \quad \text{and} \quad T\bar{T} = 1 \qquad (14.5)$$

and (14.2) becomes identical with the equation obtained if the representation (7.10) is chosen for the operators β^ν so that it is a possible quaternion form for Dirac's equation. We shall show presently that by a suitable transformation this equation may be transformed into the standard form (5.10) adopted in this investigation. A quaternion T satisfying (14.5) can be always put in the form (see §4)

$$T = C e_3 C^\dagger , \quad \mathcal{N}(C) = C\bar{C} = 1 .$$

Thus (14.2) can be written as

$$D\Psi = \mu \Psi^* C e_3 C^\dagger \qquad (14.6).$$

As C is constant the transformation

$$\Psi' = \Psi C^{\times}$$

reduces (14.6) to Watson's quaternion form

$$D\Psi' = \mu \Psi'^{\times} e_3$$

The advantage of Dirac's equation in the form (14.2) is that a general space-like constant vector L appears in the equation instead of the spatial direction specified by e_3 in Watson's form. In this more symmetrical form it is found that Dirac's equation can be written in a symmetrical vector form. Thus, if we put

$$L = i l_0 + e_1 l_1 + e_2 l_2 + e_3 l_3$$

where

$$l_1^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2 - l_0^2 = \mu^2 \qquad (l_\mu = \text{const.})$$

and

$$\Psi = a_0 + i b_0 + i \underline{a} - \underline{b} ,$$

with the help of (1.12) we find the vector form of (14.2), i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned}
&\partial_0 a_0 + \underline{\nabla} \cdot \underline{a} = l_0 b_0 + \underline{l} \cdot \underline{b} \\
&\partial_0 b_0 + \underline{\nabla} \cdot \underline{b} = l_0 a_0 + \underline{l} \cdot \underline{a} \\
&\partial_0 \underline{a} + \underline{\nabla} a_0 - \underline{\nabla} \wedge \underline{b} = -l_0 \underline{b} - \underline{l} b_0 + \underline{l} \wedge \underline{a} \\
&\partial_0 \underline{b} + \underline{\nabla} b_0 + \underline{\nabla} \wedge \underline{a} = -l_0 \underline{a} - \underline{l} a_0 - \underline{l} \wedge \underline{b} .
\end{aligned}$$

The general tensor form of these equations will be given in § 30. The choice of Watson's form is equivalent to the choice of a coordinate system for the vector equations for

which $l_3 = \mu$ and $l_1 = l_2 = l_0 = 0$.
Hence it is interesting to know the Dirac form of (14.2). If again ψ denotes the column matrix associated with Ψ the formulae (2.11) and (2.12) lead to the equation

$$(\partial_0 + \Sigma \alpha_m \partial_m)\psi = (l_0 \alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3 - i l_3)\beta\psi - (l_1 + i l_2)\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\beta\varphi \qquad (14.7)$$

where $\varphi = -i\alpha_2\beta\psi^*$ is the charge conjugate function.
It may be verified directly that (14.7) leads to the second order equation for ψ and that it reduces to the familiar Dirac equation if we take $l_3 = \mu$, $l_1 = l_2 = l_0 = 0$.
(14.7) can be transformed into this standard form through a transformation which corresponds to the quaternion transformation

$$\Psi \to \Psi C$$

and which involves the charge conjugate function.

We now turn to the important case where the norm of L vanishes, i.e.

$$l_1^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2 - l_0^2 = 0 \qquad (14.8)$$

A real quaternion R with norm unity can always be found such that

$$l_1 e_1 + l_2 e_2 + l_3 e_3 = \sqrt{(l_1^2 + l_2^2 + l_3^2)}\; R\, e_3 \bar{R}$$

and L takes the form

$$L = l_0 R (i + e_3) \bar{R}$$

Inserting this value for L in (14.2) and making the transformation

$$\Psi R = \Phi$$

we obtain the canonical form of (14.2) in the case of zero rest-mass, i.e.

$$D\Phi = l_0 \Phi^* (i + e_3). \qquad (14.9)$$

Consequently, when the norm of L vanishes the equation (14.7) can always be transformed into

$$(\partial_0 + \Sigma \alpha_m \partial_m)\xi = l_0 (\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3 - i)\beta^3 \xi \qquad (14.10)$$

where ξ is the column matrix which corresponds to

The equation (14.7) with the condition (14.8) or the canonical equation (14.10) leads to the second order equation

$$(\partial_0^2 - \partial_1^2 - \partial_2^2 - \partial_3^2)\,\xi = 0 .$$

Hence (14.10) represents a particle of rest mass zero and spin $\frac{1}{2}$. The wave equation of such a particle is usually taken as

$$(\partial_0 + \Sigma \alpha_m \partial_m)\xi = 0$$

The equation (14.10) suggested by the quaternion solution of the divergence equation (14.1) provides an alternative solution of the problem.

The plane wave solutions of (14.9) can be found easily by means of quaternions. Putting

$$\Phi = \xi \exp(e_3 \lambda / h)$$

where

$$\lambda = p^\nu x_\nu = \bar{P} \cdot X$$

we can transform (14.9) into the algebraic equation

$$\bar{P}\xi = h\, l_0\, \xi\hat{}\,(1 - i e_3).$$

Hence the energy-momentum vector is given by

$$P = \hbar\, l_0 \xi\, (1 + i e_3)(\xi^*)^{-1}.$$

This relation shows that the norm of P must vanish, so that a solution exists only if

$$p^\nu p_\nu = 0 .$$

The general plane wave solution of (14.9) reads

$$\Phi = \xi \exp\{e_3\, l_0\, \xi^*(1 - i e_3)\,\xi^{-1}\cdot X\}. \qquad (14.11)$$

With the help of any solution Φ of (14.9) we can construct four mutually orthogonal four-vectors, namely

$$\Phi\Phi^\dagger\,,\quad \Phi\, i e_1\, \Phi^\dagger\,,\quad \Phi\, i e_2\, \Phi^\dagger\,,\quad \Phi\, i e_3\, \Phi^\dagger .$$

In particular if Φ_n represents a plane wave solution (14.11) associated with the energy-momentum vector P_n the vectors $\Phi_n \Phi_n^\dagger$ and $\Phi_n\, i e_3\, \Phi_n^\dagger$ are seen to be constant quaternions. The vectors $\Phi_n\, i e_1\, \Phi_n^\dagger$ and $\Phi_n\, i e_2\, \Phi_n^\dagger$, however, depend on the coordinates and we have

$$A'_{nn} = \Phi_n\, i e_1\, \Phi_n^\dagger = \xi_n\, e^{2 e_3 \lambda_n / \hbar}\, i e_1\, \xi_n^\dagger$$

$$A''_{nn} = \Phi_n\, i e_2\, \Phi_n^\dagger = \xi_n\, e^{2 e_3 \lambda_n / \hbar}\, i e_2\, \xi_n^\dagger$$

where $\lambda_n = \overline{P}_n \cdot X$.

It can be easily verified that A'_{nn} and A''_{nn} are plane wave solutions of the Maxwell equations in vacuum

$$\begin{cases} \overline{\mathrm{D}}\mathrm{DA} = 0 \\ \mathrm{D}.\mathrm{A} = 0 \end{cases}$$

and correspond to circularly polarized plane waves. Conversely such plane waves solutions of Maxwell's equations can be expressed in terms of the plane wave solutions of the

equation (14.10). We also note that the hermitian quaternions $A'_{n,n}$ and $A''_{n,n}$ correspond to the de Broglie vectors in the case of Dirac's equation.

CHAPTER IV

Some Simple Quaternion Solutions.

§15. Second order Equations.

The Second order equation satisfied by the wave function can be easily deduced from the first order equation

$$\hbar D \Psi e_3 = m_0 c \hat{\Psi} + e \bar{A} \Psi \qquad (15.1)$$

and its complex conjugate

$$\hbar \bar{D} \Psi^{\times} e_3 = m_0 c \Psi + e A \hat{\Psi} \qquad (15.2)$$

On multiplying (15.1) to the left by $\hbar \bar{D}$ and to the right by e_3 and using (15.2) we get

$$-\hbar^2 D\bar{D}\Psi = m_0^2 c^2 \Psi + e\hbar \bar{D}(\bar{A}\Psi)e_3 + m_0 c e A \hat{\Psi}.$$

In this equation we insert the value of $m_0 c \hat{\Psi}$ as given by (15.1) and find

$$-\hbar^2 D\bar{D}\Psi = (m_0^2 c^2 - e^2 A\bar{A})\Psi + e\hbar(\bar{D}\bar{A} + AD)\Psi e_3 .$$

On the other hand (see Weiss, or § 28 of this thesis) Maxwell's equations can be written

$$\begin{cases} DA = -\underline{F} \\ -\bar{D}\underline{F} = J \end{cases} \qquad (15.3)$$

where

$$A = A_0 + ie_1 A_1 + ie_2 A_2 + ie_3 A_3$$

$$J = \rho + ie_1 j_1 + ie_2 j_2 + ie_3 j_3$$

$$\underline{F} = \sum e_m (iE_m + H_m) = i\underline{E} + \underline{H}$$

Now

$$(\bar{D}A + AD)\Psi = (\bar{D}\bar{A})\Psi + (\bar{D}\bar{A}_0 + AD)\Psi$$
$$= (\bar{D}\bar{A})\Psi + 2(A.D)\Psi .$$

(The symbol $\bar{D}\bar{A}_0$ means that $\bar{D}$ does not operate on $\bar{A}$).

Thus, using (15.3) we obtain the following quaternion form of the second order equation

$$-k^2\bar{D}D\Psi = (m_0^2c^2 - e^2A\bar{A})\Psi + 2ek(A.D)\Psi e_3 + ek(i\underline{E} - \underline{H})\Psi e_3 \qquad (15.4)$$

The last term is the spin term as it is seen from the quaternion representation of the spin operators in § 8. A different quaternion form for the second order equation was proposed by Fischer (1948). But in his equation the multiplication of Ψ to the right by e_3 in (15.4) is replaced by ordinary multiplication by i. Fischer's equation is clearly incorrect since it cannot be deduced from any quaternion equation of the first order. As we have pointed out in § 9, a similar confusion between the operators i and $(\ )e_3$ occurs in Watson's paper, leading this author to a wrong interpretation of the rotation of the coordinate system round the Oz axis.

Another difficulty which arises in connection with the second order equation is the following: in Dirac's formalism, the term in $\underline{E}$ occurs as an energy due to an imaginary electric moment of the electron (cf. Dirac 1947, p. 264). We shall now show that for a very slow electron the imaginary part of the wave quaternion Ψ may be neglected in the first approximation. Thus the equation (15.4) reduces to

its real part which is of the same form, but with the term in $\underline{E}$ missing. We write

$$\Psi = (\chi + i\eta)\exp(-e_3 Et/\hbar) \qquad (15.5)$$

where χ and η are real. The separation of the real and the imaginary parts of (15.1) gives the real quaternion equations

$$\tfrac{1}{c} E\chi - \hbar \underline{\nabla}\eta e_3 = m_0 c\chi + \tfrac{e}{c} A_0\chi + \tfrac{e}{c}\underline{A}\eta \qquad (15.6)$$

$$\tfrac{1}{c} E\eta + \hbar\underline{\nabla}\chi e_3 = -m_0 c\eta + \tfrac{e}{c} A_0\eta - \tfrac{e}{c}\underline{A}\chi \,. \qquad (15.7)$$

For positive energy solutions we can put

$$E = m_0 c^2 + W$$

In the non-relativistic case W is small compared with $m_0 c^2$. Hence if we keep only the terms in $\frac{1}{c}$ and $\frac{1}{c^2}$, (15.7) becomes

$$\eta = -\frac{\hbar}{2m_0 c}\underline{\nabla}\chi e_3 - \frac{e}{2m_0 c}\underline{A}\chi \,. \qquad (15.8)$$

This shows that η is small for positive energy solutions. Hence Ψ reduces to its real part $\chi\exp(-e_3 Et/\hbar)$

The Pauli equation may be obtained by inserting η as given by (15.8) in the equation (15.6). The resulting equation for the real quaternion χ is

$$W\chi = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_0}(\underline{\nabla}\cdot\underline{\nabla})\chi + \frac{e\hbar}{m_0 c}(\underline{A}\cdot\underline{\nabla})\chi e_3 - \frac{e\hbar}{2m_0 c}\underline{H}\chi e_3 \,.$$

As χ is a real quaternion we can use the irreducible representations

$$\chi = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_1 & -\psi_2^* \\ \psi_2 & \psi_1^* \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad e_3 = \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix}$$

to obtain Pauli's form

$$W\psi = \left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_0}\nabla^2 + i\frac{e\hbar}{m_0 c}\underline{A}\cdot\underline{\nabla} - \frac{e\hbar}{2m_0 c}\underline{\sigma}\cdot\underline{H}\right)\psi$$

where $\underline{\sigma}$ is Pauli's spin operator.

In nuclear theory more general types of interaction besides the electromagnetic interaction have to be considered. As the mass of a nucleon is large the non-relativistic approximation is of special interest. The most general equation with the Pauli interaction term (anomalous magnetic moment) a scalar field ω and a pseudo-vector field B, is given by

$$i\hbar\,(\partial_0 + i\underline{\nabla})\Psi e_3 = m_0 c\,\Psi^{\times} + \frac{1}{c}\omega\Psi^{\times} + \frac{e\ell}{m_0 c^2}(i\underline{E}+\underline{H})\Psi^{\times} e_3 + i\frac{1}{c}(B_0 + i\underline{B})\Psi e_3 + \frac{e}{c}(A_0 + i\underline{A})\Psi .$$

Assuming the solution (15.5) we obtain, in the first approximation

$$\frac{1}{c}(W - \omega - eA_0)\chi - \frac{e\ell}{m_0c^2}\underline{H}\chi e_3 - \frac{1}{c}\underline{B}\chi e_3 = i\hbar\underline{\nabla}\eta e_3 + \frac{e\ell}{m_0c^2}\underline{E}\eta e_3 + \frac{e}{c}\underline{A}\eta + \frac{1}{c}B_0\eta e_3 .$$

$$2m_0c\,\eta = -i\hbar\underline{\nabla}\chi e_3 - \frac{e\ell}{m_0c^2}\underline{E}\chi e_3 - \frac{e}{c}\underline{A}\chi + \frac{1}{c}B_0\chi e_3 .$$

The equation in χ is obtained by inserting the approximate value of η as given by (15.11) in (15.10). Retaining only terms in c^{-1} and c^{-2} we find

$$W\chi = (\omega + eA_0)\chi - \frac{\hbar^2}{2m_0}\nabla^2\chi + \frac{e\hbar}{m_0c}\underline{A}\cdot\underline{\nabla}\chi e_3 + \underline{B}\chi e_3 + \frac{e^2A^2}{2m_0c^2}\chi + \frac{e\ell}{m_0c}\underline{H}\chi e_3 - \frac{e\hbar}{2m_0c}\underline{H}\chi e_3 - \frac{1}{2m_0c}(\underline{\nabla}B_0)\chi + \frac{e\ell\hbar}{m_0^2c^2}(\underline{\nabla}\underline{E})\chi - \frac{1}{2m_0c^2}B_0^2\chi + \frac{e^2\ell}{m_0^2c^2}(\underline{A}\cdot\underline{E})\chi e_3 .$$

Using the irreducible representation for χ and Pauli's matrices we finally have

$$W\psi = \Big\{\omega + eA_0 + \frac{1}{2m_0}\Big(i\hbar\underline{\nabla} + \frac{e}{c}\underline{A}\Big)\cdot\Big(i\hbar\underline{\nabla} + \frac{e}{c}\underline{A}\Big) + \frac{e\hbar}{2m_0c}(1-2\ell)\underline{H}\cdot\underline{\sigma} - \underline{B}\cdot\underline{\sigma} + \frac{\hbar}{2m_0c}(\underline{\sigma}\cdot\underline{\nabla})B_0 - \frac{1}{2m_0c}B_0^2 - i\frac{e^2\ell}{m_0^2c^2}(\underline{A}\cdot\underline{E}) + \frac{e\ell\hbar}{m_0^2c^2}\underline{E}\cdot\underline{\nabla} + \frac{ie\ell\hbar}{m_0^2c^2}(\underline{\sigma}\cdot\underline{\nabla})(\underline{\sigma}\cdot\underline{E})\Big\}\psi .$$

The problem of finding the non-relativistic approximation of the wave equation in the case of a general field has been studied in detail by G. Petiau (J. Phys. 1949). The method used by this author is essentially the same as that proposed by Darwin (1928. p.654). We have shown in this section that the algebraic properties of the quaternions provide a simple and rapid method of solution.

§16. Free electron solutions.

In §13 we have already given the plane wave solution of Dirac's equation for the free electron

$$\hbar D\Psi = m_0 c \Psi e_3$$

in the form

$$\Psi = e^{\frac{1}{2} i \pi \alpha} R e^{e_3 \lambda / \hbar} \qquad (16.1)$$

where

$$\lambda = m_0 c (ct \cosh\alpha - \underline{r} \cdot \underline{\pi} \sinh\alpha)$$

the energy momentum four-vector being given by

$$E/c + i\underline{p} = m_0 c (\cosh\alpha + i\underline{\pi} \sinh\alpha)$$

and R is an arbitrary real quaternion.

The wave function is normalized in such a way that

$$R \bar{R} \cosh\alpha = \ell^3$$

where ℓ^3 is the volume of the cube enclosing the electron.

Putting

$$K = R \cosh\alpha = A + e_2 B \qquad (16.2)$$

where

$$A = a_1 - e_3 a_2 \quad , B = b_1 - e_3 b_2$$

we get

$$\Psi = (1 + i\underline{\pi} \tanh\tfrac{\alpha}{2}) K \exp(e_3 \lambda/\hbar)$$

or

$$\Psi = [1 + ic\underline{p}/(E + m_0 c^2)] K \exp(e_3 \lambda/\hbar) \qquad (16.3)$$

since

$$\underline{\pi} \tanh\tfrac{\alpha}{2} = (\underline{p} \tanh\tfrac{\alpha}{2}) / (m_0 c \sinh\tfrac{\alpha}{2}) = \underline{p} / \{m_0 c (1 + \cosh\alpha)\}$$

The standard solution for the free electron in Dirac's formalism can be derived easily from (16.3) as follows: First we replace K in (16.3) by its value (16.2). We find

$$\underline{p}K = [e_3 p_3 + e_2(p_2 + e_3 p_1)](A + e_2 B)$$
$$= [e_3 p_3 A - (p_2 - e_3 p_1)B] + e_2[(p_2 + e_3 p_1)A - e_3 p_3 B],$$

going over to Dirac's representation and applying the rules expressed by (2.9) and (2.10) we obtain for the elements of the column matrix ψ the familiar expressions

$$\psi_1 = A' \exp(-iS) \quad , \quad \psi_2 = B' \exp(-iS)$$

$$\psi_3 = -\frac{p_3 A' + (p_1 - ip_2)B'}{E/c + m_0 c} \exp(-iS) \quad , \quad \psi_4 = \frac{(p_1 + ip_2)A' - p_3 B'}{E/c + m_0 c} \exp(-iS)$$

where

$$S = \lambda/\hbar \quad , \quad A' = a_1 + ia_2 \quad \text{and} \quad B' = b_1 + ib_2 .$$

The plane wave solution corresponds to an energy $\pm m_0 c^2 \cosh\alpha$ with an absolute value larger than $m_0 c^2$. We now seek a solution such that $|E| < m_0 c^2$. Accordingly one is led to put

$$E = m_0 c^2 \cos\beta \qquad (-\tfrac{\pi}{2} < \beta < \tfrac{\pi}{2})$$

and $\Psi = \eta \exp(e_3 Et/\hbar)$.

Dirac's equation takes the form

$$(\cos\beta)\,\eta - l_0 \, i\underline{\nabla}\eta e_3 = \eta^\times \qquad (l_0 = \hbar/m_0 c)$$

Further, let

$$\eta = K \exp(-l_0^{-1}(\sin\beta)\,\underline{a}\cdot\underline{r})$$

where K satisfies the algebraic equation

$$K\cos\beta + i\underline{a}Ke_3\sin\beta = K^\times .$$

The solution of this algebraic equation is

$$K = (\underline{a}F + Fe_3)\exp(i\tfrac{\beta}{2}) = L\exp(\tfrac{i}{2}\beta)$$

where F, is an arbitrary real quaternion

and $L = \underline{a} F + F e_3$

is a real quaternion such that

$$\underline{a} L e_3 = - L .$$

Hence the solution of Dirac's equation for $E = m_0 c^2 \cos\beta$ is

$$\Psi = (\underline{a} F + F e_3) \exp\left\{ \frac{i}{2}\beta - \frac{m_0 c}{\hbar} (\sin\beta \; \underline{a}.\underline{r} - e_3 t \cos\beta) \right\} \qquad (16.4)$$

and is seen to represent a wave decaying exponentially in the direction specified by $+\underline{a}$.

This solution is not bounded since the probability density

$$\Psi \Psi^\dagger = L \bar{L} \exp(-\underline{b}.\underline{r})$$

where $\left(\underline{b} = \underline{a} \frac{m_0 c}{2\hbar} \sin\beta \right)$

increases exponentially in the negative $\underline{a}$ direction. However, corresponding to the same value of E another solution can be constructed by changing the sign of β in (16.4). Any linear combination and in particular half the sum of these two solutions is also a solution of Dirac's equation. Thus we obtain the bounded solution

$$\Psi = L \cos\tfrac{1}{2}(i\beta - \underline{b}.\underline{r}) \exp\left(\frac{m_0 c}{\hbar} t \cos\beta\right).$$

The probality density reduces to its scalar part and it has the bounded value

$$\Psi \Psi^\dagger = \left| \cos\tfrac{1}{2}(i\beta - \underline{b}.\underline{r}) \right|^2 = L \bar{L} (\cos^2\tfrac{1}{2} \underline{b}.\underline{r} + \sinh^2 \tfrac{1}{2}\beta).$$

As the velocity vanishes in both cases the solutions (16.4) and (16.5) correspond to stationary waves.

17. One dimensional motion of the electron.

The particular case where the potential depends on one variable only has been studied by K. Nikolsky (1930), F. Sauter (1931) and M.S. Plesset (1932). In this section we give a quaternion solution of the problem. Sauter's method is nearest our own since he takes the wave function as a linear function of the matrices generated by Dirac's operators $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \beta$. Hence his wave function depends on sixteen complex functions and the elimination of the arbitrary constants thus introduced is effected in a rather arbitrary way. Plesset introduces a canonical transformation which simplifies the problem of splitting Dirac's equation into two identical two-component equations. A similar method is proposed by Mott & Sneddon (1947).

All these methods have one defect in common: unlike the non-relativistic Schrödinger equation, the simplified two-component equation obtained after the elimination of the variables on which the potential does not depend bears very little resemblance to the equation one would obtain by omitting those variables from the general Dirac equation. In short one would expect a relation between the solution

of the equation

$$k\,i\,(\partial_0 + iV(z) + \alpha_1\partial_1 + \alpha_2\partial_2 + \alpha_3\partial_3)\,\psi = \mu\beta\psi$$

and the solution of the reduced equation

$$k\,i\,(\partial_0 + iV(z) + \alpha_3\partial_3)\,\eta = \mu'\beta\,\eta \qquad (x^3 = z)$$

(We are considering a motion in the Oz direction).

In this last equation as the only operators are α_3 and β, such that $\alpha_3^2 = \beta^2 = 1$, $\alpha_3\beta + \beta\alpha_3 = 0$, they may be represented by 2 x 2 matrices. This is exactly what the quaternion method achieves to do.

Dirac's equation in this case is

$$D\Psi e_3 = \mu\Psi^* - V(z)\Psi .$$

By putting

$$\Psi = \xi \exp e_3 (Et - p_1 x - p_2 y) \quad \text{where } x = x',\ y = x^2,$$

we obtain

$$[E - V(z)]\,\xi + i e_3 \frac{d\xi}{dz} e_3 = \mu(\xi^* + i\underline{a}\,k\,\xi) \qquad (17.1)$$

where

$$\xi = \xi(z), \quad k = \sqrt{p_1^2 + p_2^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \underline{a} = k^{-1}(p_1 e_1 + p_2 e_2).$$

Now consider the transformation

$$\xi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\chi + \underline{a}\chi^*) \qquad (17.2)$$

Its inverse is given by

$$\chi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\xi - \underline{a}\,\xi^*).$$

Substituting in (17.1), and noting that $\underline{a}$ anticommuts with e_3 we obtain

$$A + \underline{a}A^* = 0 . \qquad (17.3)$$

where

$$A = (E-V)\chi + ie_3 \frac{d\chi}{dz} e_3 - \mu(1-ik)\chi^* .$$

But, since the transformation (17.2) has an inverse, (17.3) implies

$$A = 0$$

Further, let

$$k = \tan\gamma \quad , \quad l = (\cos\gamma)^{-1} ,$$

we have $1 - ik = l \exp(-i\gamma)$.

We make the transformation

$$\chi = \eta \exp(-\tfrac{i}{2}\gamma)$$

and get the equation

$$(E-V)\eta + ie_3 \frac{d\eta}{dz} e_3 = \mu l \eta^* \qquad (17.4)$$

which has exactly the same form as the general equation if the wave function is assumed to be independent of x and y.

Now the quaternion η can always be put in the form

$$\eta = \eta_1 + \underline{a}\,\eta_2^*$$

where η_1 and η_2 commute with e_3. We find that both satisfy the equation

$$(E-V)\zeta - i\frac{d\zeta}{dz} = \mu l \zeta^* . \qquad (17.5)$$

ζ is of the form

$$\zeta = \zeta_1 + e_3 \zeta_2$$

where ζ_1 and ζ_2 are complex scalar functions which both satisfy (17.5). Hence if ζ_1 is a scalar solution of (17.5) we can obtain a solution which satisfies the same boundary

conditions by taking

$$\zeta = (u_1 + e_3 u_2)\,\zeta_1$$

where u_1 and u_2 are real numbers.

Now η can be taken as

$$\eta = v_1 \zeta + \underline{a}\, v_2 \zeta^*$$

where v_1 and v_2 are real numbers.

Hence η has the form

$$\eta = (\lambda_1 + e_3\lambda_2)\zeta_1 + \underline{a}(\lambda_1' + e_3\lambda_2')\zeta_1^* = \lambda\zeta_1 + \underline{a}\,\lambda'\zeta_1^*$$

and the solution of (17.1) is

$$\xi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left\{ e^{-i\delta/2}\eta + \underline{a}\, e^{i\delta/2}\eta^* \right\}$$

which can also be written as

$$\xi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left\{ (\lambda e^{-i\delta/2} - \lambda' e^{i\delta/2})\zeta_1 + \underline{a}(\lambda' e^{-i\delta/2} + \lambda e^{i\delta/2})\zeta_1^* \right\}.$$

In short, the equation (17.1) can be solved if a solution of the one-component equation (17.5) is known. This brings about a very substantial simplification of the problem.

This method can be transposed directly into Dirac's formalism as follows:

The equation to be solved is

$$(E - V)\psi + i\alpha_3 \frac{d\psi}{dz} = \mu\beta\psi + \alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3 \tau k \psi \qquad (17.6)$$

where k is defined as before and the operator τ is defined by

$$\tau = k^{-1}(p_1\alpha_3\alpha_2 + p_2\alpha_1\alpha_3).$$

We have

$$\tau^2 = -1\,, \quad \tau\beta = \beta\tau\,, \quad \tau\alpha_3 = -\alpha_3\tau$$

and $$\tau(\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3) = (\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3)\tau\,.$$

On putting

$$\psi = \frac{1-\tau\beta}{\sqrt{2}}\chi$$

the equation (17.6) becomes

$$\frac{1-\tau\beta}{\sqrt{2}}\left\{(E-V)\chi + i\alpha_3\frac{d\chi}{dz}\right\} - \mu\left(\beta + \alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\tau k\right)\frac{1-\tau\beta}{\sqrt{2}}\chi = 0$$

and as

$$\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\tau(1-\tau\beta) = (1-\tau\beta)\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\beta$$

we obtain

$$(E-V)\chi + i\alpha_3\frac{d\chi}{dz} - \mu(1+\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3 k)\beta\chi = 0 .$$

We next make the transformation

$$\chi = \exp\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3\gamma\right)\varphi \quad \text{where} \quad \tan\gamma = k .$$

The new function φ satisfies the equation

$$(E-V)\varphi + i\alpha_3\frac{d\varphi}{dz} = \mu l\beta\varphi \quad , \text{where} \quad l = \sqrt{1+k^2} .$$

Using Dirac's matrices we get the matrix equation

$$(E-V)\begin{pmatrix}\varphi_1\\ \varphi_2\\ \varphi_3\\ \varphi_4\end{pmatrix} + i\frac{d}{dz}\begin{pmatrix}\varphi_3\\ -\varphi_4\\ \varphi_1\\ -\varphi_2\end{pmatrix} = \mu l\begin{pmatrix}\varphi_1\\ \varphi_2\\ -\varphi_3\\ -\varphi_4\end{pmatrix} .$$

We note that the pairs (φ_1, φ_3) and $(-\varphi_4, \varphi_2)$ satisfy the same two-component equation

$$(E-V)\varphi' + i\alpha_3'\frac{d}{dz}\varphi' = \mu l\beta'\varphi' \qquad (17.7)$$

where

$$\varphi' = \begin{pmatrix}f\\ g\end{pmatrix} \quad , \alpha_3' = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 0\end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \beta' = \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\ 0 & -1\end{pmatrix} .$$

From a solution of (17.7) we derive

$$\varphi = \begin{pmatrix} Af \\ Bf \\ Ag \\ -Bg \end{pmatrix}$$

where A and B are complex numbers, and the solution of (17.6) is given by

$$\psi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \exp\left(\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3 \frac{\gamma}{2}\right) \varphi .$$

Further if we put

$$f = u_1 + iv_1 \quad , \quad g = iu_2 - v_2$$

$$U = u_1 - iu_2 \quad , \quad V = v_1 - iv_2$$

we find that U and V satisfy the same one-component equation

$$(E - V)U - i\frac{dU}{dz} = \mu l U^* .$$

which is the same as (17.5) derived by the quaternion method.

§18. Electron between two potential barriers.

In this section we shall employ the two types of free electron waves (progressive and stationary) in connection with the problem of an electron moving between two potential barriers of magnitude Φ and separated by a distance 2L. We shall suppose that Φ is the time component of an electromagnetic type of interaction in the frame of reference where the energy is E. If we take the potential barriers at the planes z = -L and z = L we have seen in the preceding section that we need only consider the one- dimensional Dirac equation (17.4). Putting $\mu' = \frac{\mu l}{\hbar}$ in (17.4) we have

$$E\eta - \hbar i e_3 \frac{d\eta}{dz} e_3 = \mu' \eta^x \qquad \text{for } -L<z<L \qquad (18.1)$$

$$(E-\Phi)\eta - \hbar i e_3 \frac{d\eta}{dz} e_3 = \mu' \eta^x \qquad \text{for } |z|>L \qquad (18.2)$$

A solution symmetrical in z and vanishing for $z = \pm\infty$ can now be obtained for all values of E such that

$$|E-\Phi| < m_0 c^2 .$$

We distinguish two cases

1) $E > m_0 c^2$

In this case we define α by

$$E = \hbar\mu \cosh\alpha .$$

The solution of (18.1), (18.2) reads

$$\eta = \exp\{-i\beta/2 + (\mu' z \sin\beta + e_3 E t)/\hbar\} \quad \text{for } z < -L$$

$$\eta = A\{\exp(i e_3 \alpha/2 - e_3 \tfrac{\mu' z}{\hbar}\sinh\alpha) + \exp(-i e_3\alpha/2 + e_3 \tfrac{\mu' z}{\hbar}\sinh\alpha)\} e^{Et/\hbar} \quad \text{for } |z|<L$$

$$\eta = B \exp\{i\beta/2 - (\mu' z \sin\beta - e_3 E t)/\hbar\} \quad \text{for } z > L ,$$

where

$$E - \phi = \mu' \cos\beta \quad \text{and} \quad E = \mu' \cosh\alpha . \qquad (18.3)$$

The elimination of E between the two equations (18.3) gives

$$\mu' \cos\beta = \mu' \cosh\alpha - \phi .$$

The condition of continuity at the plane z = L and z = -L requires that

$$\cos\tfrac{\beta}{2}\left[\exp(-\mu' L \sin\beta)/\hbar\right] B = 2\cosh\tfrac{\alpha}{2}\cos(\tfrac{\mu' L}{\hbar}\sinh\alpha) A$$

$$\sin\tfrac{\beta}{2}\left[\exp(-\mu' L \sin\beta)/\hbar\right] B = 2\sinh\tfrac{\alpha}{2}\sin(\tfrac{\mu' L}{\hbar}\sinh\alpha) A .$$

Therefore a solution exists only if α satisfies the equation

$$\tan\tfrac{\beta}{2} = \tanh\tfrac{\alpha}{2}\tan(\tfrac{\mu' L}{\hbar}\sinh\alpha) . \qquad (18.4)$$

In the non-relativistic approximation if we put

$$E = m_0 c^2 + W \quad , \quad k^2 = 2m_0(\phi - W) \quad \text{and} \quad a^2 = 2m_0 W$$

(18.4) reduces to

$$a \tan(aL) = k$$

which is the eigenvalue equation for W in Schrödinger's theory.

2) $|E| < m_0 c^2$

In this case we put

$$\tilde{\iota} = \mu' \cos\gamma$$

and obtain the solution

$$\Psi = B \exp\{-i\beta/\lambda + \frac{\mu' z}{\hbar}\sin\beta + \epsilon_3 Et/\hbar\} \quad \text{for} \quad z < -L$$

$$\Psi = A\cos(i\gamma/\lambda - \frac{\mu' z}{\hbar}\sin\delta)\exp(\epsilon_3 Et/\hbar) \quad \text{for} \quad |z| < L$$

$$\Psi = B \exp\{i\beta/\lambda - \frac{\mu' z}{\hbar}\sin\beta + \epsilon_3 Et/\hbar\} \quad \text{for} \quad z > L .$$

The continuity conditions give

$$B \exp(i\beta/\lambda - \frac{\mu' L}{\hbar}\sin\beta) = A\cos(i\gamma/\lambda - \frac{\mu' L}{\hbar}\sin\gamma)$$

and the complex conjugate equation derived from it.

Separating the real and imaginary parts we get

$$B\cos\frac{\beta}{2} = A\cosh\frac{\gamma}{2}\cos(\frac{\mu' L}{\hbar}\sin\gamma)$$

and $$B\sin\frac{\beta}{2} = A\sinh\frac{\gamma}{2}\sin(\frac{\mu' L}{\hbar}\sin\gamma) .$$

These equations lead to the eigenvalue equation

$$\tan\frac{\beta}{2} = \tanh\frac{\gamma}{2}\tan(\frac{\mu' L}{\hbar}\sin\gamma)$$

where β and γ are functions of E defined by

$$\mu'\cos\beta = E - \phi$$

$$\mu'\cos\gamma = E .$$

Hence, provided the potential barrier is finite, for any values of E such that $|E - \phi| < m_0 c^2$ we can find eigensolutions which vanish at infinity.

§19. The Electron in the field of a plane wave.

The problem of the relativistic electron in the field of a monochromatic linearly polarized plane electromagnetic wave has been solved rigorously by Volkow (1935) and Singupta (1947). Recently Taub (1949) has given a more elegant solution with the help of the spinor calculus. In this section a very simple quaternion solution will be outlined.

The Dirac equation in this case can be written

$$\hbar D\Psi e_3 = m_0 c \Psi^* - \frac{e}{c} A \Psi \qquad (19.1)$$

where

$$A = U\varphi(\lambda).$$

U is a constant hermitian quaternion and φ is a scalar function of the phase

$$\lambda = \overline{N} \cdot X$$

where $X = x_0 + ie_1 x' + ie_2 x^2 + ie_3 x^3$,

and $N = \frac{1}{2}(1 + i\underline{n})$

is a null-vector, $\underline{n}$ being the unit vector in the direction of propagation of the electromagnetic wave.

The Maxwell equations are

$$D\overline{D}A = 0 \qquad \overline{D} \cdot A = 0 .$$

Hence $N \cdot U = N \cdot A = 0$ (19.2)

Let

$$\Psi = \Gamma \exp(-e_3 S/\hbar).$$

(19.1) gets replaced by

$$\hbar D\Gamma e_3 + (DS)\Gamma + \tfrac{e}{c} A\Gamma = m_0 c \Gamma^* .$$

An exact solution is obtained if a quaternion Γ and a real scalar function S can be found such that

$$D\Gamma = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad DS + \tfrac{e}{c} A = m_0 c \Gamma^* \Gamma^{-1} .$$

Clearly $\Gamma\bar{\Gamma}$ must be real. We can always normalize the wave function such that $\Gamma\bar{\Gamma} = 1$. Hence we must have

$$\Gamma\bar{\Gamma} = 1 \tag{19.3}$$

$$D\Gamma = 0 \tag{19.4}$$

$$m_0 c \Gamma^* \bar{\Gamma} = DS + \tfrac{e}{c} A \tag{19.5}$$

A quaternion which satisfies (19.3) and (19.4) is clearly

$$\Gamma = (1 + kNA)\xi \tag{19.6}$$

where ξ is a constant quaternion such that

$$\xi\bar{\xi} = 1$$

and k is a constant scalar to be determined later.

In the absence of field

$$\bar{V} = \xi\xi^\dagger = \Psi\Psi^\dagger$$

would be the velocity vector of the free electron. With the value (19.6) for Γ, the velocity vector is

$$\Psi\Psi^\dagger = (1 + kNA)\xi\xi^\dagger(1 + kAN)$$

$$= \bar{V} + 2k\,\mathcal{H}(NA\bar{V}) + k^2 NA\bar{V}AN .$$

Here $\mathcal{H}(NA\bar{V})$ denotes the hermitian part of $NA\bar{V}$.

Now, if C_1, C_2, C_3 are hermitian quaternions we have the identity (cf. 24.20)

$$\mathcal{H}(C_1 \bar{C}_2 C_3) = (C_1 . \bar{C}_2) C_3 + (C_2 . \bar{C}_3) C_1 - (C_3 . \bar{C}_1) C_2 .$$

Hence, using (19.2) we get

$$\mathcal{H}(N A \bar{V}) = (A . \bar{V}) N - (N . V) \bar{A}$$

and

$$N A \bar{V} A N = \mathcal{H}\{N(A \bar{V} A) N\} = 2\{N . (A \bar{V} A)\} N$$

But

$$A \bar{V} A = 2(A . \bar{V}) A - (A \bar{A}) V$$

$$N . (A \bar{V} A) = - (\bar{A} A)(N . V)$$

in virtue of (19.2), so that

$$N A \bar{V} A N = -2(\bar{A} A)(N . V) N .$$

Thus we find

$$\Psi \Psi^\dagger = \Gamma \Gamma^\dagger = \bar{V} - 2k(N . V) \bar{A} + \{2k(A . \bar{V}) - 2k^2 (A \bar{A})(N . V)\} N .$$

In order that in the equation (19.5) the coefficient of $\bar{A}$ be zero we must choose

$$k = - \frac{e}{m_0 c^2} \frac{1}{2(N . V)} .$$

The resulting equation is

$$D S = m_0 c V - \frac{\bar{N}}{(N . V)} \left\{ \frac{e}{c} (A . \bar{V}) + \frac{1}{2} \frac{e^2}{m_0 c^2} A \bar{A} \right\}$$

and the phase S is found to be

$$S = m_0 c \, V . X - \frac{1}{N . V} \int_{\lambda_0}^{\lambda} \left\{ \frac{e}{c} (U . \bar{V}) \varphi(\lambda) + \frac{e^2}{2 m_0 c^2} U \bar{U} \varphi^2(\lambda) \right\} d\lambda$$

since $\bar{N} . dX = d\lambda$.

CHAPTER V

The Wave Equation in Angular Coordinate.

§ 20. Commutation relations and eigen functions of the angular momentum operator.

Before proceeding to the solution of Dirac's equation in angular coordination we give a quaternion treatment of the properties of the angular momentum operator. The components of this operator are in Dirac's formalism

$$m_{uv} = x_u p_v - x_v p_u \qquad (u,v = 1,2,3) \quad (20.1)$$
$$= -ih\,(x_u \partial_v - x_v \partial_u)$$

According to the quaternion representation (5.10) of the momentum operators, if Ψ is the quaternion wave function we have

$$m_{uv}\Psi = h\,(x_u \partial_v - x_v \partial_u)\Psi e_3 .$$

Hence we need only study the properties of the quaternion

$$\underline{\Lambda} = \underline{r} \wedge \underline{\nabla} = e_1(x^2\partial_3 - x^3\partial_2) + e_2(x^3\partial_1 - x^1\partial_3) + e_3(x^1\partial_2 - x^2\partial_1) \qquad (20.2)$$

where

$$\underline{r} = e_1 x^1 + e_2 x^2 + e_3 x^3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \underline{\nabla} = e_1\partial_1 + e_2\partial_2 + e_3\partial_3 . \qquad (20.3)$$

In polar coordinates we have

$$\underline{r} = r\, B e_3 \overline{B}$$

where the real quaternion B depends on the angular coordinates only and is given by

$$B = e^{e_3 \frac{\varphi}{2}} e^{e_2 \frac{\theta}{2}} \tag{20.4}$$

since (20.3) is equivalent to

$$x^1 = r \sin\theta \cos\varphi \ , \quad x^2 = r \sin\theta \sin\varphi \ , \quad x^3 = r \cos\theta \ .$$

We shall also use the notation

$$\underline{\xi} = r^{-1} \underline{r} = B e_3 \bar{B} \tag{20.5}$$

for the unit radial vector.

We find that the polar form of the operator $\underline{\Lambda}$ is

$$\underline{\Lambda} = B e_2 \bar{B} \partial_\theta - \bar{B} e_1 \bar{B} (\sin\theta)^{-1} \partial_\varphi \ . \tag{20.6}$$

The square of this operator is

$$\underline{\Lambda}\underline{\Lambda} = -\underline{\Lambda} \cdot \underline{\Lambda} + \underline{\Lambda} \wedge \underline{\Lambda} = (B e_2 \bar{B} \partial_\theta - B e_1 \bar{B} (\sin\theta)^{-1} \partial_\varphi)^2$$

$$= -\partial_\theta^2 - (\sin\theta)^{-2} \partial_\varphi^2 - \cot\theta \partial_\theta - B e_2 \bar{B} \partial_\theta + B e_1 \bar{B} (\sin\theta)^{-1} \partial_\varphi \ .$$

Hence, on separating the scalar and vectorial parts we obtain

$$\underline{\Lambda} \cdot \underline{\Lambda} = (\sin\theta)^{-1} \partial_\theta \sin\theta \, \partial_\theta + (\sin\theta)^{-2} \partial_\varphi^2 \tag{20.7}$$

and

$$\underline{\Lambda} \wedge \underline{\Lambda} = - \underline{\Lambda} \tag{20.8}$$

The operator (20.7) appears in the polar form of Laplace's equation and (20.8) gives the well-known commutation relations for the angular momentum operator.

In order to find the eigen functions of the operator $\underline{\Lambda}$ we first transform the expression (20.6) in the following way: since

$$\bar{B} \partial_\theta \Psi = \partial_\theta (\bar{B} \Psi) - (\partial_\theta \bar{B}) \Psi$$

or, symbolically

$$\bar{B}\,\partial_\theta = \partial_\theta \bar{B} - (\partial_\theta \bar{B})$$

where $(\partial_\theta \bar{B})$ is a quaternion which depends on θ and φ, we can write

$$\underline{\Lambda} = B(e_2\partial_\theta - e_1 \frac{1}{\sin\theta}\partial_\varphi)\bar{B} - \{B(e_2\partial_\theta - e_1\frac{1}{\sin\theta}\partial_\varphi)\bar{B}\}.$$

Now the term between curly brackets is easily evaluated. One finds

$$(e_2\partial_\theta - e_1\frac{1}{\sin\theta}\partial_\varphi)\bar{B} = (1 - \tfrac{1}{2}e_2\cot\theta)\,\bar{B}. \qquad (20.9)$$

Hence

$$1 + \underline{\Lambda} = B\,\underline{L}\,\bar{B} \qquad (20.10)$$

where

$$\underline{L} = e_2(\partial_\theta + \tfrac{1}{2}\cot\theta) - e_1(\sin\theta)^{-1}\partial_\varphi \qquad (20.11)$$

Let X'_ℓ be a real quaternion which is an eigen-function of the operator $\underline{L}$, belonging to the eigenvalue $-\ell$. We have

$$\underline{L}\,X'_\ell = -\ell X'_\ell. \qquad (20.12)$$

Writing

$$X_\ell = B X'_\ell \qquad (20.13)$$

in (20.12) we obtain

$$B\,\underline{L}\,\bar{B} X_\ell = -\ell X_\ell$$

or, by (20.10)

$$\underline{\Lambda} X_\ell = -(\ell+1) X_\ell. \qquad (20.14)$$

Thus, if X'_ℓ is an eigen-function of $\underline{L}$, then X_ℓ (20.13) is an eigen-function of $\underline{\Lambda}$. We now prove that $\underline{\varepsilon} X_\ell$ is also an eigenfunction of $\underline{\Lambda}$ and that we have

$$\underline{\Lambda}(\underline{\varepsilon} X_\ell) = (\ell-1)\,\underline{\varepsilon} X_\ell. \qquad (20.15)$$

To see this we multiply (20.12) to the left and to the right by e_3 . As e_3 anticommutes with $\underline{L}$ we have

$$e_3 X'_l e_3 = X'_{-l} \tag{20.16}$$

and from (20.13)

$$\underline{\varepsilon} X_l e_3 = X_{-l} . \tag{20.17}$$

X_{-l} and $\underline{\varepsilon} X_l = - X_{-l} e_3$ both satisfy (20.15).

The eigenvalues of the operator $-\underline{\Lambda} . \underline{\Lambda}$ which is given by (20.7) in polar coordinates can be deduced simply from (20.14). Using the identity

$$\underline{\Lambda}\,\underline{\Lambda} = - \underline{\Lambda} . \underline{\Lambda} - \underline{\Lambda}$$

which is a consequence of (20.8), we have

$$-(\underline{\Lambda} . \underline{\Lambda}) X_l = (1 + \underline{\Lambda})\underline{\Lambda}\, X_l = l(l+1) X_l . \tag{20.18}$$

Hence X_l is an eigen-function of this scalar operator and corresponds to the eigenvalue $l(l+1)$. The eigen-function which corresponds to the eigenvalue $l(l-1)$ is X_{-l} given by (20.17).

Hence the solution of the equation

$$\{ \underline{\Lambda} . \underline{\Lambda} + l(l+1) \} X_l = 0$$

can be derived from the very simple linear equation (20.12).

We now proceed to show that X'_l can be simply expressed in terms of Legendre functions. Let

$$X'_l = q(\theta) \exp\{ - e_3 (m + \tfrac{1}{2}) \varphi \} \tag{20.19}$$

where $q(\theta)$ is a quaternion which depends on θ only.

The equation satisfied by q is

$$\left(\frac{d}{d\theta} + \tfrac{1}{2}\cot\theta\right) q + (\sin\theta)^{-1}\left(m+\tfrac{1}{2}\right) e_3 q e_3 = l e_2 q .$$

The further transformation

$$q = (u + e_2 v)\exp\left(-e_2 \frac{\theta}{2}\right) = q' \exp\left(-e_2 \frac{\theta}{2}\right) \qquad (20.20)$$

where $q' = u + e_2 v$

and u and v are scalar functions of θ, leads to the equation

$$\left(\frac{d}{d\theta} + \tfrac{1}{2}\cot\theta\right) q' - \left(m+\tfrac{1}{2}\right)(\cot\theta)\,\bar{q}' = \left(m+\tfrac{1}{2}\right) e_2 \bar{q}' + \left(l+\tfrac{1}{2}\right) e_2 q' \qquad (20.21)$$

since e_2 commutes with q' and

$$e_3 q' e_3 = -\bar{q}' .$$

The quaternion equation (20.21) is equivalent to the scalar equations

$$\left(\frac{d}{d\theta} - m\cot\theta\right) u = -(l-m) v$$

and

$$\left[\frac{d}{d\theta} + (m+1)\cot\theta\right] v = (l+m+1) u .$$

But these equations are identical with the recurrence relations between associated Legendre functions so that we can take

$$u = (l-m)\, P_{l,m}(\cos\theta) \quad \text{and} \quad v = P_{l,m+1}(\cos\theta) .$$

Using (20.20), (20.14) and (20.4) we obtain

$$X'_{l,m} = \left\{(l-m) P_{l,m} + e_2 P_{l,m+1}\right\} \bar{B} \exp(-e_3 m\varphi) \qquad (20.22)$$

and finally, from (20.13)

$$X_{l,m} = (l-m) P_{l,m} e^{-e_3 m\varphi} + e_2 P_{l,m+1} e^{-e_3 (m+1)\varphi} \qquad (20.23)$$

If we are looking for single valued solutions of (20.14) the numbers l and m must be integers. Denoting the spherical

harmonics by

$$Y_{l,m} = P_{l,m}(\cos\theta)\, e^{-e_3 m\varphi}$$

we can also write

$$X_{l,m} = (l-m)Y_{l,m} + e_2 Y_{l,m+1}\,.$$

In section 9 we have seen that the quaternion equivalent of the spin operator in the Oz direction is

$$\sigma_3 = \sigma_{12} = -e_3(\ )e_3$$

where the function on which σ_{12} operates has to be inserted between the brackets. The total angular momentum is

$$\mathcal{M}_{12} = m_{12} + \tfrac{1}{2}\hbar\sigma_{12}\,.$$

We have

$$\mathcal{M}_{12}X_{l,m} = \hbar\partial_\varphi X_{l,m}e_3 - \tfrac{1}{2}\hbar e_3 X_{l,m}e_3\,.$$

But, from (20.13) and (20.22)

$$X_l = B\,[u(\theta) + e_2 v(\theta)]\,\bar{B}\,e^{-e_3 m\varphi}\,.$$

Since

$$\partial_\varphi B = \tfrac{1}{2}e_3 B$$

we obtain

$$\mathcal{M}_{12}X_{l,m} = (m+\tfrac{1}{2})X_{l,m}\,.$$

Hence the eigenvalues of $\mathcal{M}_{12}$ are of the form $m+\frac{1}{2}$, where m is integer. Thus, the spin term arises from the fact that $X_{l,m}$ cannot be expressed as the product of two quaternions, one depending on θ and one on φ only.

§21. Commutation relations and eigenfunctions of the generalized angular momentum operator.

Born & Fuchs (1939. p.100) have given the relativistic generalization of (20.1) as

$$m_{\mu\nu} = x_\mu p_\nu - x_\nu p_\mu = -ih(x_\mu \partial_\nu - x_\nu \partial_\mu) \qquad (\mu, \nu = 0, 1, 2, 3).$$

and deduced some of the properties of this generalized angular momentum operator. The eigenfunctions and the eigenvalues of this operator become important when the problem has a four-dimensional spherical symmetry (e.g. if the interaction terms depend on the four-dimensional interval only, or if the boundary conditions possess pseudo-spherical symmetry).

In this section its properties will be studied by means of quaternions. As before we need only consider the vectorial quaternion

$$\underline{K} = I^\mu \bar{I}^\nu (x_\mu \partial_\nu - x_\nu \partial_\mu) = I_\mu \bar{I}^\nu (x^\mu \partial_\nu - x^\nu \partial_\mu)$$

where I^ν is given by (4.1), and $I_\nu = \bar{I}^\nu$ from §4.

We have, since $x^0 = x_0$,

$$\underline{K} = \mathcal{V}(I_\mu x^\mu \bar{I}^\nu \partial_\nu) = \mathcal{V}\{(x^0 + i\underline{r})(\partial_0 + i\underline{\nabla})\}$$
$$= i(x_0 \underline{\nabla} + \underline{r}\partial_0) - \underline{r} \wedge \underline{\nabla}.$$

Or, on putting

$$\underline{N} = x_0 \underline{\nabla} + \underline{r}\partial_0 \qquad (21.1)$$

we can write, using (20.2),

$$\underline{K} = i\underline{N} - \underline{\Lambda}.$$

The four-dimensional ~~en~~polar coordinates $\tau, \alpha, \theta, \varphi$

are defined by the equations

$$x^0 = \tau \cosh\alpha \quad , \quad x^1 = \tau \sinh\alpha \sin\theta \cos\varphi$$
$$x^2 = \tau \sinh\alpha \sin\theta \sin\varphi \, , \quad x^3 = \tau \sinh\alpha \cos\theta$$

which are equivalent to the quaternion relation

$$X = I_\nu x^\nu = \tau Q^\dagger Q \qquad (21.2)$$

where

$$Q = e^{i e_3 \frac{\alpha}{2}} e^{-e_2 \frac{\theta}{2}} e^{-e_3 \frac{\varphi}{2}} \qquad (|Q| = 1) . \qquad (21.3)$$

We find that

$$D = \sum_\nu I_\nu \partial_\nu = \bar{I}^\nu \partial_\nu = \bar{Q} Q^\times \partial_\tau + \bar{Q}\, i e_1 Q^\times \frac{1}{\tau \sinh\alpha} \partial_\theta$$
$$+ \bar{Q}\, i e_2 Q^\times \frac{1}{\tau \sinh\alpha \sin\theta} \partial_\varphi + \bar{Q}\, i e_3 Q^\times \frac{1}{\tau} \partial_\alpha .$$

Hence

$$\underline{K} = V(XD) = Q^\dagger i e_1 Q^\times \frac{1}{\sinh\alpha} \partial_\theta + Q^\dagger i e_2 Q^\times \frac{1}{\sinh\alpha \sin\theta} \partial_\varphi + Q^\dagger i e_3 Q^\times \partial_\alpha \qquad (21.4)$$

depends only on the angular coordinates α, θ and φ.

From (20.6) we find after some simple transformations

$$\underline{K} = i\underline{\varepsilon} \left(\partial_\alpha - \coth\alpha \, \underline{\Lambda} \right) - \underline{\Lambda}$$

where $\underline{\varepsilon}$ is given by (20.5) so that

$$\underline{N} = \underline{\varepsilon} \left(\partial_\alpha - \coth\alpha \, \underline{\Lambda} \right) . \qquad (21.5)$$

We shall now prove the following commutation relation

$$\underline{N}\,\underline{\Lambda} + \underline{\Lambda}\,\underline{N} = -2\underline{N} . \qquad (21.6)$$

As $\underline{\Lambda}$ commutes with the bracketted term in (21.5) we have

$$\underline{N}\,\underline{\Lambda} + \underline{\Lambda}\,\underline{N} = (\underline{\varepsilon}\,\underline{\Lambda} + \underline{\Lambda}\,\underline{\varepsilon}) \left(\partial_\alpha - \coth\alpha \, \underline{\Lambda} \right) .$$

From (20.5) and (20.10):

$$\underline{\varepsilon}\,\underline{\Lambda} + \underline{\Lambda}\,\underline{\varepsilon} = B (e_3 \underline{L} + \underline{L} e_3) \bar{B} - 2 B e_3 \bar{B} = -2\underline{\varepsilon}$$

since $\underline{L}$ anticommutes with e_3. Hence, with the help of (21.5) this proves (21.6).

The next commutation relation we want to prove is

$$\underline{N} \wedge \underline{N} = \underline{\Lambda} \qquad (21.7)$$

It is convenient to use the cartesian form (2.12) for $\underline{N}$. We have

$$\underline{N} \wedge \underline{N} = \mathcal{V}(\underline{N}\underline{N}) = \mathcal{V}\{x_0 \partial_0 (\underline{\nabla}\,\underline{r} + \underline{r}\,\underline{\nabla}) + \underline{r}\,\underline{\nabla}\}$$

since

$$\partial_0 x_0 = x_0 \partial_0 + 1 .$$

On the other hand

$$\underline{\nabla}\,\underline{r} = (\underline{\nabla}\,\underline{r}) + e_1 \underline{r}\,\partial_1 + e_2 \underline{r}\,\partial_2 + e_3 \underline{r}\,\partial_3 ,$$

and since $(\underline{\nabla}\,\underline{r}) = -3$ the operator

$$(\underline{\nabla}\,\underline{r} + \underline{r}\,\underline{\nabla}) = -3 - 2\,\underline{r}\cdot\underline{\nabla}$$

is a scalar operator. Therefore

$$\underline{N} \wedge \underline{N} = \mathcal{V}(\underline{N}\underline{N}) = \mathcal{V}(\underline{r}\,\underline{\nabla}) = \underline{r} \wedge \underline{\nabla} ,$$

and this completes the proof of (21.7)

We can now show easily that

$$\underline{K} \wedge \underline{K} = 2\underline{K} \qquad (21.8)$$

This relation is a straightforward generalization of (20.8). We have

$$\underline{K} \wedge \underline{K} = \mathcal{V}(\underline{K}\underline{K}) = \mathcal{V}(i\underline{N} - \underline{\Lambda})^2 = \mathcal{V}\{\underline{\Lambda}\underline{\Lambda} - \underline{N}\underline{N} - i(\underline{N}\underline{\Lambda} + \underline{\Lambda}\underline{N})\}$$

From (21.6), (21.7) and (20.8) we find

$$\underline{K} \wedge \underline{K} = 2i\underline{N} - 2\underline{\Lambda}$$

which proves (21.8).

We also find

$$-\underline{K}\cdot\underline{K} = \mathcal{S}(\underline{K}\underline{K}) = \mathcal{S}(\underline{\Lambda}\underline{\Lambda} - \underline{N}\underline{N} + 2i\underline{N}) = -\underline{\Lambda}\cdot\underline{\Lambda} + \underline{N}\cdot\underline{N} ,$$

and since

$$\underline{K}\,\underline{K} = -\underline{K}\cdot\underline{K} + \underline{K}\wedge\underline{K} \ ,$$

from (21.8) we deduce that

$$-\underline{K}\cdot\underline{K} = \underline{N}\cdot\underline{N} - \underline{\Lambda}\cdot\underline{\Lambda} = \underline{K}(\underline{K}-2) \ . \qquad (21.9)$$

The scalar operator $-\underline{K}\cdot\underline{K}$ occurs in D'Alembert's equation so that if an eigenfunction U_k of the operator $\underline{K}$ corresponds to the eigenvalue -k, i.e.

$$\underline{K}\,U_k = -k\,U_k \qquad (21.10)$$

then U_k is also an eigenfunction of the scalar operator (21.9) and corresponds to the eigenvalue k(k+2) because

$$-(\underline{K}\cdot\underline{K})\,U_k = \underline{K}(\underline{K}-2)\,U_k = k(k+2)\,U_k \ .$$

Again we notice that (21.9) is a relativistic generalization of the three-dimensional equation

$$-\underline{\Lambda}\cdot\underline{\Lambda} = \underline{\Lambda}\,(\underline{\Lambda}+1) \ .$$

We now seek the quaternion solutions of (21.10). Let

$$U_k = Q^{\dagger}\,U'_k \qquad (21.11)$$

where Q is defined by (21.3).

Now, going back to the expression (21.4) we can write

$$\underline{\pi} = Q^{\dagger} ie_3\left[\partial_\alpha - (\sinh\alpha)^{-1}\left(e_2\partial_\theta - e_1\frac{1}{\sin\theta}\partial_\varphi\right)\right]Q^{x}$$
$$- Q^{\dagger} ie_3\left\{\left[\partial_\alpha - (\sinh\alpha)^{-1}\left(e_2\partial_\theta - e_1\frac{1}{\sin\theta}\partial_\varphi\right)\right]Q^{\wedge}\right\} \qquad (21.12)$$

where the second term is a function of α, θ and φ, and is not a differential operator. Remembering that

$$Q^{x} = e^{-ie_3\frac{\alpha}{2}}\,\overline{B} = \left(\cosh\tfrac{\alpha}{2} - ie_3\sinh\tfrac{\alpha}{2}\right)\overline{B}$$

and using (20.9) we obtain

$$(e_2\partial_\theta - e_1\frac{1}{\sin\theta}\partial_\varphi)e^{-ie_3\frac{\alpha}{2}}\bar{B} = e^{ie_3\frac{\alpha}{2}}(1-\tfrac{1}{2}e_2\cot\theta)\bar{B}$$
$$= (e^{ie_3\alpha} - \tfrac{1}{2}e_2\cot\theta)Q^x .$$

The contribution of the term in ∂_α to the curly bracket is

$$(\partial_\alpha Q^x) = \partial_\alpha e^{-ie_3\frac{\alpha}{2}}\bar{B} = -\frac{ie_3}{2}Q^x .$$

Hence the second term of (21.12) reads

$$Q^\dagger ie_3\{\tfrac{ie_3}{2} + \tfrac{1}{\sinh\alpha}(e^{ie_3\alpha} - \tfrac{1}{2}e_2\cot\theta)\}Q^x$$
$$= \tfrac{3}{2} + Q^\dagger(ie_3\coth\alpha - \tfrac{1}{2}ie_1\frac{\cot\theta}{\sinh\alpha})Q^\wedge$$

so that we have finally

$$\underline{K} = \tfrac{3}{2} + Q^\dagger K' Q^x \qquad (21.13)$$

where

$$K' = ie_3(\partial_\alpha + \coth\alpha - \frac{1}{\sinh\alpha}\underline{L}) . \qquad (21.14)$$

$\underline{L}$ is given by (20.11).

Inserting (21.13) and (21.11) in (21.10) we obtain the equation

$$K'U'_k = -(k+\tfrac{3}{2})U'_k \qquad (21.15)$$

Hence U'_k is an eigenfunction of the operator K' and corresponds to the eigenvalue $-(k+\frac{3}{2})$. The equation (21.15) written explicitly as

$$(\partial_\alpha + \coth\alpha - \frac{1}{\sinh\alpha}\underline{L})U'_k = -(k+\tfrac{3}{2})ie_3U'_k \qquad (21.16)$$

becomes separable if we put

$$U'_k = V(\alpha)X'_\ell(\theta,\varphi) \qquad (21.17)$$

where X'_ℓ is the real quaternion given by (20.22) and where $V(\alpha)$ is a complex quaternion which depends on α only and

commutes with e_3. We define the real scalar functions $F(\alpha)$ and $G(\alpha)$ by the equation

$$V = (F + ie_3 G)\, e^{ie_3 \frac{\alpha}{2}} \tag{21.18}$$

Substituting (21.17) in (21.16) and remembering that $\underline{L}$ anticommutes with e_3, with the help of (20.12) we obtain

$$\left(\frac{d}{d\alpha} + \coth\alpha\right) V = -\left(k + \tfrac{3}{2}\right) ie_3 V - \frac{l}{\sinh\alpha} V^x \tag{21.19}$$

which, by (21.18) leads to the real scalar equations

$$\left[\frac{d}{d\alpha} + (l+1)\coth\alpha\right] F = -(k+l+2)\, G$$

$$\left[\frac{d}{d\alpha} - (l-1)\coth\alpha\right] G = -(k-l+2) F .$$

These equations are further simplified on putting

$$F + ie_3 G = (f + ie_3 g)/\sinh\alpha$$

and $\xi = \coth\alpha$.

We have

$$\left[(1-\xi^2)\frac{d}{d\xi} + l\xi\right] f = -(k+2+l)\, g \tag{21.20}$$

$$\left[(1-\xi^2)\frac{d}{d\xi} - l\xi\right] g = -(k+2-l) f . \tag{21.21}$$

Comparing this system of equations with the recurrence relations between the Legendre functions $P_l^{k+2}(\xi)$ and $P_{l-1}^{k+2}(\xi)$ (cf. Hobson p.290), namely

$$\left[(1-\xi^2)\frac{d}{d\xi} + l\xi\right] P_l^{k+2} = (k+2+l)\, P_{l-1}^{k+2}$$

$$\left[(1-\xi^2)\frac{d}{d\xi} - l\xi\right] P_{l-1}^{k+2} = (k+2-l)\, P_l^{k+2}$$

we see that (21.20) and (21.21) are satisfied if we take

$$f = P_l^{k+2}(\xi) \qquad \text{and} \qquad g = -P_{l-1}^{k+2}(\xi)$$

In physical applications we are interested in those

solutions which vanish at infinity on the space-like surface defined by

$$x_0^2 - x_1^2 - x_2^2 - x_3^2 = \tau^2 = \text{const}.$$

Hence, we must have $f = g = 0$ for $\alpha \to \pm\infty$ or $\xi = \pm 1$. But by Hobson (p.94) such solutions of (21.20) and (21.21) correspond to integral values of $k < \ell$. Hence f and g are associated Legendre polynomials.

To evaluate V(22.18) we need the recurrence relations (Hobson p.290)

$$\xi P_\ell^{k+2} - P_{\ell-1}^{k+2} = (\ell-k-1) P_\ell^{k+1} \sqrt{\xi^2-1}$$

$$P_\ell^{k+2} - \xi P_{\ell-1}^{k+2} = (\ell+k+1) P_{\ell-1}^{k+1} \sqrt{\xi^2-1}$$

which are valid since $\xi > 1$. We obtain

$$e^{ie_3\alpha}(f+ie_3 g) = \frac{\xi+ie_3}{\sqrt{\xi^2-1}}\left(P_\ell^{k+2} - ie_3 P_{\ell-1}^{k+2}\right)$$
$$= (\ell-k-1) P_\ell^{k+1} + ie_3(\ell+k+1) P_{\ell-1}^{k+1}.$$

But by (21.11), (21.17) and (21.18)

$$U_k = B e^{ie_3\alpha}(f+ie_3 g) X'_\ell (\sinh\alpha)^{-1}.$$

Hence, from (20.9)

$$U_k = (\sinh\alpha)^{-1} B\{(\ell-k-1) P_\ell^{k+1}(\xi) + ie_3(\ell+k+1) P_{\ell-1}^{k+1}(\xi)\}\bar{B} X_\ell(\theta,\varphi)$$

and the full expression of U is

$$U_\ell^{k,m} = (\sinh\alpha)^{-1}\{(\ell-k-1) P_\ell^{k+1}(\coth\alpha) + i\xi(\ell+k+1) P_{\ell-1}^{k+1}(\coth\alpha)\}$$
$$\times\{(\ell-m) P_\ell^m(\cos\theta) e^{-e_3 m\varphi} + e_2 P_\ell^{m+1}(\cos\theta) e^{-e_3(m+1)\varphi}\} C \qquad (21.22)$$

where C is a constant real quaternion.

Noticing that $P_{-\ell} = P_{\ell-1}$ we obtain another

independent solution which reads

$$U_{-\ell}^{k,m} = (\sinh\alpha)^{-1}\{(\ell+k+1)P_{\ell-1}^{\ell+1}(\coth\alpha) + i\varepsilon(1-k-1)P_{\ell}^{\ell+1}(\coth\alpha)\}$$

$$\times\left\{(\ell+m)P_{\ell-1}^{m}(\cos\theta)\,e^{-e_3 m\varphi} - e_2 P_{\ell}^{m+1}(\cos\theta)\,e^{-e_3(m+1)\varphi}\right\}C.$$

It may be noted that, as defined by (21.14), K' is purely imaginary. Hence taking the complex conjugate of (21.15) we have

$$K'(U_k')^{*} = (k+\tfrac{3}{2})(U_k')^{*} = -\{-(k+3)+\tfrac{3}{2}\}(U_k')^{*}.$$

Hence the relation

$$(U_k')^{*} = U'_{-(k+3)}. \qquad (21.23)$$

Now, replacing k by -k-3 in (22.10) we have

$$\underline{K}\,U_{-(k+3)} = (k+3)\,U_{-(k+3)} \qquad (21.24)$$

But, from (21.11)

$$(U_k')^{*} = Q(U_k)^{*} \qquad (21.25)$$

Hence, using (21.23)

$$U'_{-(k+3)} = Q(U_k)^{*},$$

and multiplying this last relation to the left by $Q^{\dagger}$

$$U_{-(k+3)} = Q^{\dagger}Q(U_k)^{*} = e^{i\varepsilon\alpha}(U_k)^{*}. \qquad (21.26)$$

Thus we see from (21.24) that if U_k is an eigenfunction of $\underline{K}$ with the eigenvalue -k, then the expression (21.25) is an eigenfunction with the eigenvalue k + 3. Here is an immediate application of this theorem: unity is an eigenfunction of $\underline{K}$ and corresponds to k = o. Hence

$$U_0 = 1\ ,\quad U_{-3} = e^{i\varepsilon\alpha}$$

and we have

$$\underline{K}\,e^{i\varepsilon\alpha} = 3\,e^{i\varepsilon\alpha}.$$

§22. Solution of Dirac's equation in four-dimensional angular coordinates.

First consider the quaternion equation (cf. notation 7.7)

$$\underline{\nabla}\,\chi = 0 \qquad (22.1)$$

which leads to the second order equation

$$(\partial_1^2 + \partial_2^2 + \partial_3^2)\,\chi = 0$$

We write

$$\chi = X_l^m(\theta,\varphi)\,R(r) \qquad (22.2)$$

where X_l^m is given by (20.28) and is an eigenfunction of $\underline{\Lambda}$. R depends on r only. Now, multiplication of (22.1) to the left by $\underline{r}$ gives

$$(-r\partial_r + \underline{\Lambda})\,\chi = 0$$

and since

$$\underline{r}\,\underline{\nabla} = -\underline{r}\cdot\underline{\nabla} + \underline{r}\wedge\underline{\nabla} = -r\partial_r + \underline{\Lambda}\,.$$

Substituting the expression (22.2) for χ we obtain an equation for R, namely

$$r\frac{dR}{dr} + (l+1)R = 0$$

which is satisfied by

$$R = a\,r^{-(l+1)} \qquad (a = \text{cons. quat.})$$

Hence a particular solution of (22.1) is

$$\chi = r^{-(l+1)}X_l^m(\theta,\varphi)\,a \qquad (22.3)$$

From (20.17) we obtain another solution

$$\chi' = r^{l-1} \underline{\varepsilon} X_l^m e_3 a' \qquad (22.4)$$

Now consider the Fränkel-Madelung equation to which Dirac's equation reduces if the rest mass of the particle vanishes, namely

$$D\eta = 0 \qquad (22.5)$$

which leads to the second order equation $\overline{D}D\eta = 0$

From (22.4) we have

$$XD = X \cdot D + \underline{K}$$

and since

$$X \cdot D = \tau \partial_\tau ,$$

on multiplying (23.5) to the left by X we obtain

$$(\tau \partial_\tau + \underline{K})\eta = 0 . \qquad (22.6)$$

One is immediately led to put

$$\eta = U_l^{k,m} T(\tau) \qquad (22.7)$$

where $U_l^{k,m}$ given by (21.22) is an eigenfunction of $\underline{K}$ and T is a quaternion which depends on τ only. Inserting (22.7) in (22.6) we find that T satisfies the equation

$$\tau \frac{dT}{d\tau} - kT = 0 \qquad (22.8)$$

since $\underline{K}\eta = -k\eta$.

The solution of (22.8) is of the form

$$T = \tau^k C$$

where C is a constant quaternion. Hence a particular solution of the Fränkel-Madelung equation is

$$\eta = \tau^k U_l^{k,m} C \qquad (22.9)$$

Another particular solution can be deduced immediately from the relation (21.25), namely

$$\eta' = \tau^{-(k+3)} e^{i\xi\alpha} (U_\ell^{k,m})^{\times} C' .$$

In particular if we take k = o we have the constant solution

$$\eta = C$$

and another solution

$$\eta = \tau^{-3} e^{i\xi\alpha} C'$$

which can also be written as

$$\eta' = -\tfrac{1}{2} (\bar{D}\tau^{-2}) C' .$$

As τ^{-2} is harmonic, it can be verified directly that

$$D\eta' = o .$$

We now turn to Dirac's equation with an invariant scalar interaction term depending on τ only, namely

$$D\Psi = [\mu + \omega(\tau)]\Psi^{\times} e_3 . \qquad (22.10)$$

For the sake of simplicity we put

$$\mu' = \mu + \omega(\tau) .$$

Now, on account of (21.2) and (21.13) we have

$$XD = \tau Q^{\dagger} Q D = \tau \partial_\tau + \underline{K} = Q^{\dagger} (\tau \partial_\tau + \tfrac{3}{2} + K') Q^{\times} .$$

Hence on multiplying both sides to the left by $\tau^{-1} \bar{Q} Q^{\times}$ we find

$$D = \bar{Q} (\partial_\tau + \frac{3}{2\tau} + \frac{1}{\tau} K') Q^{\times}, \qquad (22.11)$$

and on making the substitution

$$\Psi = Q^{\dagger} \Phi$$

the equation (22.10) is replaced by

$$(\partial_\tau + \tfrac{3}{2\tau} + \tfrac{1}{\tau} K')\Phi = \mu' \Phi^{\times} e_3 \qquad (22.12)$$

where K' is given by (21.14)

We try to satisfy this equation by a function of the form

$$\Phi = U_\ell^{'km} A(\tau)\tau^{-1} + (U_\ell^{'km})^{\times} B(\tau)\tau^{-1} e_3 .$$

Here $U_\ell^{'km}$ is an eigenfunction of the operator K' and is given by (21.17). From (21.15) and (21.23) it follows that

$$K'\Phi = -(k+\tfrac{3}{2})[U_\ell^{'km} A\tau^{-1} - (U_\ell^{'km})^{\times} B\tau^{-1} e_3] .$$

Inserting this expression in (23.12) we obtain the equation

$$U_\ell^{'km}\{(\partial_\tau + \tfrac{3}{2\tau} - \tfrac{k+3/2}{\tau})A\tau^{-1} + \mu' B\tau^{-1}\}$$
$$+ (U_\ell^{'km})^{\times}\{(\partial_\tau + \tfrac{3}{2\tau} + \tfrac{k+3/2}{\tau})B\tau^{-1} - \mu' A\tau^{-1}\} e_3 = 0$$

which can be satisfied by taking A and B scalar functions of τ such that the curly brackets vanish, i.e.

$$\begin{cases} (\frac{d}{d\tau} - \frac{k+1}{\tau})A = -\mu'(\tau) B = -[\mu + \omega(\tau)]B \\ (\frac{d}{d\tau} + \frac{k+2}{\tau})B = \mu'(\tau) A = [\mu + \omega(\tau)]A . \end{cases} \qquad (22.13)$$

It would be very interesting to see if these equations lead to an eigenvalue equation for the rest mass μ when the invariant potential $\omega(\tau)$ takes special forms.

In the simple case of a free electron ω vanishes. Comparing the equations (23.13) with the recurrence relations for Bessel functions (cf. Whittaker & Watson, p. 360):

$$(\frac{d}{d\tau} + \frac{n}{\tau}) J_n(\tau) = J_{n-1}(\tau)$$
$$(\frac{d}{d\tau} - \frac{n-1}{\tau}) J_{n-1}(\tau) = -J_n(\tau)$$

we find that (22.13) are satisfied if we take

$$A = J_{k+1}(\mu\tau) \quad \text{and} \quad B = J_{k+2}(\mu\tau) .$$

Hence a particular solution of (22.10) for the free electron, such that Ψ vanishes at infinity on the space-like surface $\tau = cons.$ is

$$\Psi = \tau^{-1} Q^{\dagger} \{ U'^{km}_{\ell} J_{k+1}(\mu\tau) + (U'^{km}_{\ell})^{x} J_{k+2}(\mu\tau) e_3 \} .$$

From (22.11) we have

$$U^{km}_{\ell} = Q^{\dagger} U'^{km}_{\ell}$$

and from (22.25)

$$Q^{\dagger} (U'^{km}_{\ell})^{x} = Q^{\dagger} Q (U^{km}_{\ell})^{x} = e^{i\varepsilon\alpha} (U^{km}_{\ell})^{x} = U^{-(k+3),m}_{\ell}$$

Hence

$$\Psi = \tau^{-1} \left\{ U^{km}_{\ell}(\alpha,\theta,\varphi) J_{k+1}(\mu\tau) + U^{-(k+3),m}_{\ell}(\alpha,\theta,\varphi) J_{k+2}(\mu\tau) e_3 \right\} .$$

This solution, when expressed as a column matrix is of the same form as the solution given by Fuchs (1940. p.147). His solution, however, is quadratically integrable on the time-like surface $r^2 - c^2 t^2 = a^2$ and not on the space-like surface $\tau = cons.$ as in this section.

§23. Solution of Dirac's equation in a conformal space-time with zero scalar curvature.

In §35 it will be shown that the formulation of Dirac's equation in an affine conformal space-time with zero scalar curvature leads to the equation

$$\hbar D \Phi = m_0 c \left(1 - \frac{a}{r}\right) \Phi^* e_3 \qquad (23.1)$$

where a is a certain constant. This equation has been solved independently by Caldirola (1948). In this section we shall give a shorter quaternion treatment. The problem is simplified in three-dimensional polar coordinates. The polar form of the differential operator $\underline{\nabla}$ (23.7) is easily obtained from the relation

$$\underline{r}\,\underline{\nabla} = -\underline{r}\cdot\underline{\nabla} + \underline{r}\wedge\underline{\nabla} = -r\partial_r + \underline{\Lambda}$$

where $\underline{\Lambda}$ is given by (20.2). From (20.6) and (20.10) it follows that

$$r B e_3 \bar{B} \underline{\nabla} = B\{-(1+r\partial_r) + \underline{L}\}\bar{B}.$$

Hence

$$\underline{\nabla} = r^{-1} B\{e_3(\partial_r r - \underline{L})\}\bar{B}.$$

Substitution of

$$\Phi = r^{-1} B \chi \exp(e_3 E t/\hbar) \qquad (23.2)$$

in (23.1) gives

$$E\chi/\hbar + i e_3(\partial_r - r^{-1}\underline{L})\chi e_3 = (m_0 c/\hbar - \gamma r^{-1})\chi^* \qquad (23.3)$$

since

$$D = \partial_0 + i\underline{\nabla}.$$

Here γ is a new constant equal to $a/\hbar$.

Now let

$$\chi = f(r)\, X'_{\ell,m}(\theta,\varphi) + i e_3\, g(r)\, X'_{\ell,m}(\theta,\varphi)\, e_3$$

where $X'_{\ell,m}$ is an eigenfunction of $\underline{L}$, given by (20.22).

With the help of (20.12) and (20.16) and assuming that f and g are not scalar functions we find that (23.3) is transformed into

$$E\,(f X'_\ell + i e_3 g X'_\ell e_3)/\hbar + i e_3 \left(\frac{df}{dr} X'_\ell + i e_3 \frac{dg}{dr} X'_\ell e_3 \right.$$
$$\left. + \frac{l}{r} f X'_\ell - i e_3 \frac{l}{r} g X'_\ell e_3\right) e_3 = (m_0 c/\hbar - \gamma/r)(f X'_\ell - i e_3 g X'_\ell e_3).$$

The separation of real and imaginary parts yields

$$\begin{cases} \left(\frac{d}{dr} + \frac{l}{r}\right) f + \frac{1}{\hbar c}\left(E + m_0 c^2 - \frac{\gamma \hbar c}{r}\right) g = 0 \\ \left(\frac{d}{dr} - \frac{l}{r}\right) g - \frac{1}{\hbar c}\left(E - m_0 c^2 + \frac{\gamma \hbar c}{r}\right) f = 0 \end{cases}.$$

It is advantageous to use the complex combination

$$v = f + ig$$

and to set

$$E = m_0 c^2 \cos\beta$$

as we are interested in the stationary values of the energy which are less in absolute value than $m_0 c^2$. Thus we obtain the single complex equation

$$\frac{dv}{dr} - i\left(\frac{m_0 c}{\hbar}\cos\beta\right) v + \frac{l}{r} v^* + i\left(\frac{m_0 c}{\hbar} - \frac{\gamma}{r}\right) v^* = 0 .$$

The further transformation

$$v = e^{i\frac{\beta}{2}} e^{-\frac{m_0 c}{\hbar} r \sin\beta}\, u \qquad (23.4)$$

yields the equation

$$e^{i\beta}\frac{du}{dr} + \frac{l - i\gamma}{r} u^* = i\frac{m_0 c}{\hbar}(u - u^*). \qquad (23.5)$$

Assume a polynomial solution of the form

$$u = \sum_{n=0}^{n=s} a_n r^{\nu+n}$$

where the coefficients a_n are complex numbers and s is an integer. If such a solution exists, then

$$\lim_{r\to\infty} \nu = 0 \qquad \text{provided} \qquad \sin\beta > 0$$

and Ψ becomes bounded.

From (23.5) the recurrence relations for the coefficients a_n is found to be

$$e^{i\beta}(\nu+n)a_n + (\ell - i\gamma)a_n^* = i\frac{mc}{\hbar}(a_{n-1} + a_{n-1}^*). \qquad (23.6)$$

As the polynomial starts with a_0 and ends with a_s we must have

$$a_{-1} = a_{s+1} = 0 .$$

Making n = 0 in (23.6) we get

$$e^{i\beta}\nu a_0 = (i\gamma - \ell)a_0^* .$$

The absolute values of both sides are equal, hence

$$\nu^2 = \gamma^2 + \ell^2 . \qquad (23.7)$$

Now (23.6), for n = s+1, reduces to

$$a_s - a_s^* = 0 .$$

Therefore a_s must be real. for n = s we have

$$[e^{i\beta}(\nu+s) + (\ell - i\gamma)]a_s = i\frac{mc}{\hbar}(a_{s-1} - a_{s-1}^*) .$$

Now, as the right hand side is real the imaginary part of the left hand side must vanish, so that

$$(\nu+s)\sin\beta - \gamma = 0 \qquad (23.8)$$

In order that the condition $\sin\beta > 0$ be satisfied we must take

$$0 < \frac{\gamma}{\nu+s} < 1 .$$

The elimination of ν between (23.8) and (23.7) leads to the eigenvalue equation

$$\sin\beta = \frac{\gamma}{s+\sqrt{(l^2+\gamma^2)}}$$

for β hence to

$$E/m_0c^2 = \left\{1 - \frac{\gamma^2}{(s+\sqrt{l^2+\gamma^2})^2}\right\}^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

for the energy.

Now, if the constant $a = \frac{1}{2}\gamma$ is interpreted as the gravitational constant (see §35), then γ is very small and putting

$$E = m_0c^2 + W$$

we have approximately

$$W = -\frac{1}{2}\frac{\gamma^2}{(s+l)^2}$$

which is of the same form as the non-relativistic energy levels of an electron in a Coulomb field with a much smaller separation constant for the energy levels.

Thus the electron possesses discrete but quasicontinuous energy levels in a space-time with zero scalar curvature.

CHAPTER VI

Properties of the Affine Space-time of Distant Parallelism

§ 24. General coordinate transformations in flat space-time. The covariant basis vectors.

In § 4 we have represented a 4-vector as a hermitian quaternion in terms of its cartesian components. In particular, if $d\xi^\mu$ denote the real cartesian components of the infinitesimal displacement vector dX, we have

$$dX = I_\mu \, d\xi^\mu \tag{24.1}$$

where I_μ are the hermitian units given by (4.1). The indices associated with cartesian coordinates are raised and lowered by means of the constant metric tensor of special relativity

$$\gamma_{\mu\nu} = I_\mu \cdot \bar{I}_\nu \quad , \quad \left(\gamma_{\mu\nu} = 0 \;\; \text{if} \;\; \mu \neq \nu \;,\; \gamma_{00} = -\gamma_{11} = -\gamma_{22} = -\gamma_{33} = 1\right) \tag{24.2}$$

We note immediately that the displacement vector may be written in the form (24.1) without interpreting I_μ as quaternions. In the ordinary notation of vector calculus if we specify dX by the complex coordinates

$$\eta^0 = d\xi^0 \quad , \eta^n = i\, d\xi^n \qquad (n = 1,2,3)$$

would be written as

$$dX = (\eta^0, \eta^1, \eta^2, \eta^3)$$

or, denoting the unit vectors by e_μ, namely

$$e_0 = (1, 0, 0, 0) \quad , \quad e_1 = (0, 1, 0, 0)$$

$$e_2 = (0, 0, 1, 0) \quad , \quad e_3 = (0, 0, 0, 1)$$

dX would take the form

$$dX = e_\mu \eta^\mu$$

which is the same as (24, 1) if we take

$$e_0 = I_0 \quad , \quad ie_n = I_n$$

Now, if a multiplication rule for the units vectors e_μ is defined by means of (1.1) then e_0 becomes unity and the e_n become quaternion units so that (24.1) represents a hermitian quaternion and if a matrix representation is adopted for the unit quaternions we can express the displacement vector dX as a matrix. This is no more mysterious than the representation of complex numbers by matrices. Yet several authors insist on calling a matrix representation of (24.1) by such strange names as matrix length (Flint, 1928), quantum geometric operator (Fock & Ivanenko, 1929) or vectrix (Duffin 195).

In this section we give a generalisation of (24.1) and (24.2) for a general coordinate system in flat space.

Under the coordinate transformation

$$\xi^\alpha = f^\alpha(x^\beta) \tag{24.3}$$

the contravariant components of dX transform according to the equation

$$d\xi^\alpha = {}^\alpha t_\beta \, dx^\beta \tag{24.4}$$

where

$${}^\alpha t_\beta = \frac{\partial f^\alpha}{\partial x^\beta} \tag{24.5}$$

Hence, putting

$$E_\beta = I_\alpha \, {}^\alpha t_\beta \tag{24.6}$$

we can write

$$dX = I_\beta \, d\xi^\beta = E_\alpha \, dx^\alpha . \tag{24.7}$$

It is clear that the quaternion dX may be regarded as invariant under the transformation (24.3) since it has exactly the same form in the two coordinate systems, the hermitian quaternions E_α replacing the unit hermitian quaternions I_α and the generalized (or curvilinear) coordinates x^α replacing the cartesian coordinates ξ^α. A remark here is necessary before we proceed any further. With the help of the new ~~coordinates~~ components dx^α of the displacement vector it is also possible to construct the hermitian quaternion

$$dX' = I_\alpha \, dx^\alpha \tag{24.8}$$

which is obviously different from dX given by (24.7) and hence, is not invariant under coordinate transformations.

The quaternion (24.8) is useful when one is dealing with conformal transformations. In this case

$$E_\alpha = f S^\dagger I_\alpha S \qquad (|S|=1) \qquad (24.8)$$

where f is scalar and S a quaternion with unit norm, and (24.7) takes the form

$$dX = f S^\dagger I_\alpha S\, dx^\alpha = f S^\dagger dX' S . \qquad (24.9)$$

Lorentz transformations which come under this group have been discussed in §4 and the general conformal transformations will be studied in detail in §35.

The interval associated with the invariant displacement (24.7) is the invariant scalar given by the norm of dX

$$ds^2 = \mathcal{N}(dX) = \gamma_{\alpha\beta}\, d\xi^\alpha d\xi^\beta = g_{\alpha\beta}\, dx^\alpha dx^\beta \qquad (24.10)$$

where the constant tensor $\gamma_{\alpha\beta}$ which belongs to the cartesian coordinates ξ^α is given by (24.2) and the metric tensor $g_{\alpha\beta}(x^0, x^1, x^2, x^3)$ which corresponds to the transformation (24.3) to the curvilinear coordinates x^α is given by

$$g_{\alpha\beta} = \mathcal{S}(E_\alpha \bar{E}_\beta) = E_\alpha . \bar{E}_\beta . \qquad (24.11)$$

Using (24.6) we can also write

$$g_{\alpha\beta} = \gamma_{\mu\nu}\, {}^\mu t_\alpha\, {}^\nu t_\beta = {}^0t_\alpha\, {}^0t_\beta - {}^1t_\alpha\, {}^1t_\beta - {}^2t_\alpha\, {}^2t_\beta - {}^3t_\alpha\, {}^3t_\beta .$$

To the doubly covariant tensor $g_{\alpha\beta}$ corresponds the doubly contravariant reciprocal tensor $g^{\alpha\beta}$ defined by

$$g^{\alpha\beta} g_{\beta\varepsilon} = \delta^\alpha_\varepsilon \qquad (24.12)$$

where $\delta^\alpha_\varepsilon$ is the Kronecker symbol. In the cartesian system we have

$$\gamma^{\mu\nu} = \gamma_{\mu\nu} .$$

We now adopt the convention that indices on the left of ${}^{\alpha}t_{\beta}$ will be raised and lowered by $\gamma_{\alpha\beta}$ and those on the right by $g_{\alpha\beta}$ and $g^{\alpha\beta}$. Thus we can write

$$\begin{aligned} g_{\alpha\beta} &= {}^{\mu}t_{\alpha}\ {}_{\mu}t_{\beta} = {}_{\mu}t_{\alpha}\ {}^{\mu}t_{\beta} \\ g^{\alpha}{}_{\beta} &= \delta^{\alpha}{}_{\beta} = {}_{\mu}t^{\alpha}\ {}^{\mu}t_{\beta} \\ \gamma_{\mu\nu} &= {}_{\mu}t^{\alpha}\ {}_{\alpha}t_{\nu} = {}_{\mu}t_{\alpha}\ {}^{\alpha}t_{\nu} \end{aligned} \qquad (24.13)$$

$$\gamma^{\mu}{}_{\nu} = \delta^{\mu}_{\nu} = {}^{\mu}t_{\alpha}\ {}^{\alpha}t_{\nu} . \qquad (24.14)$$

The contravariant basis quaternions

$$E^{\alpha} = g^{\alpha\rho} E_{\beta} = I^{\mu}\ {}_{\mu}t^{\alpha} = I_{\mu}\ {}^{\mu}t^{\alpha} \qquad (24.15)$$

are seen, from (24.13), to satisfy the relations

$$E^{\alpha} . \bar{E}_{\beta} = \delta^{\alpha}_{\beta} . \qquad (24.16)$$

Multiplying both sides of the first equation (24.15) scalarly by $\bar{E}^{\beta}$, or raising the suffix β in (24.16) we also obtain

$$g^{\alpha\beta} = E^{\alpha} . \bar{E}^{\beta} . \qquad (24.17)$$

Now let a^{α} be the contravariant components of a 4-vector. It follows that the hermitian quaternion

$$A = E_{\alpha} a^{\alpha} = E^{\alpha} a_{\alpha} \qquad (24.18)$$

is an invariant since a^{α} transform like dx^{α}. The covariant components of A are here denoted by a_{α}. Multiplying both sides scalarly by $\bar{E}^{\beta}$ or $\bar{E}_{\beta}$ and using (24.16) we find

$$\begin{aligned} a^{\alpha} &= \bar{E}^{\alpha} . A \\ a_{\alpha} &= \bar{E}_{\alpha} . A . \end{aligned}$$

Since A is invariant, it can also be written in the cartesian form

$$A = I_\alpha \, {}^{\alpha}a$$

where the cartesian coordinates ${}^{\alpha}a$ of A are given by

$${}^{\alpha}a = \bar{I}^{\alpha} . A .$$

Replacing A by its expression in curvilinear coordinates (24.18) and using (24.6) and (24.2) we find

$${}^{\alpha}a = {}^{\alpha}t_\beta \, a\beta . \qquad (24.19)$$

This important formula will be used to connect covariant and contravariant coordinates of a vector in a general curvilinear coordinate system specified by right indices with its cartesian coordinates specified by left indices. When this rule is applied to the components of the vector dX we have

$${}^{\alpha}(dx) = \bar{I}^{\alpha} . dX = d\xi^{\alpha}$$

and

$${}^{\alpha}E = {}^{\alpha}t_\beta E^\beta = I^{\alpha}$$

so that we can write

$$dX = E_\alpha \, dx^\alpha = {}_{\alpha}E \, {}^{\alpha}(dx)$$

and

$$A = E_\alpha \, a^\alpha = {}_{\alpha}E \, {}^{\alpha}a$$

where the right indices refer to the curvilinear coordinate system and the left indices to the cartesian frame of reference. It will be noticed that if the vector A is constant, its cartesian components will also be constant while its curvilinear components will change from point to point.

We shall now derive two identities between covariant and contravariant basis quaternions which will be employed frequently in the remainder of this work. Consider the hermitian quaternion

$$G_{\lambda\mu\nu} = \mathcal{H}(E_\lambda \bar{E}_\mu E_\nu)$$

where the symbol $\mathcal{H}$ defined by (1.8) means the hermitian part of the complex quaternion inside the brackets. To evaluate G we need the following lemma: if A, B and C are three hermitian quaternions then we have the identity

$$\mathcal{H}(A\bar{B}C) = (A.\bar{B})C + (B.\bar{C})A - (C.\bar{A})B \qquad (24.20)$$

which is easily proved by writing out the components of A, B and C. If now we take

$$A = E_\lambda \ , \ B = E_\mu \ , \ C = E_\nu$$

(24.20) gives by (24.11)

$$G_{\lambda\mu\nu} = \mathcal{H}(E_\lambda \bar{E}_\mu E_\nu) = g_{\lambda\mu} E_\nu + g_{\mu\nu} E_\lambda - g_{\nu\lambda} E_\mu \ . \qquad (24.21)$$

Now again making use of a notation given in (1.8) let $E_{\lambda\mu\nu}$ denote the antihermitian part of $E_\lambda \bar{E}_\mu E_\nu$:

$$E_{\lambda\mu\nu} = \mathcal{A}(E_\lambda \bar{E}_\mu E_\nu) = \tfrac{1}{2}(E_\lambda \bar{E}_\mu E_\nu - E_\nu \bar{E}_\mu E_\lambda) . \qquad (24.22)$$

To derive a new expression for the antihermitian quaternion (24.22) we need the lemma: if A, B, C are hermitian and their components defined by

$$A = I_\mu a^\mu \ , \ B = I_\mu b^\mu \ , \ C = I_\mu c^\mu$$

then we have (24.23)

$$\mathcal{C}(A\bar{B}C) = -i\begin{vmatrix} a' & b' & c' \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \\ a^3 & b^3 & c^3 \end{vmatrix} + e_1\begin{vmatrix} a^\circ & b^\circ & c^\circ \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \\ a^3 & b^3 & c^3 \end{vmatrix} + e_2\begin{vmatrix} a^\circ & b^\circ & c^\circ \\ a^3 & b^3 & c^3 \\ a' & b' & c' \end{vmatrix} + e_3\begin{vmatrix} a^\circ & b^\circ & c^\circ \\ a' & b' & c' \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix} \qquad (24.23)$$

The lemma is proved by the application of (1.12) which gives

$$\mathcal{C}(A\bar{B}C) = \tfrac{1}{2}(A\bar{B}C - C\bar{B}A) = -i\underline{a}\cdot(\underline{b}\wedge\underline{c}) + a_\circ(\underline{b}\wedge\underline{c}) + b_\circ(\underline{c}\wedge\underline{a}) + c_\circ(\underline{a}\wedge\underline{b})$$

thus proving (24.23). From (24.23) it follows that the components of $E_{\lambda\mu\nu}$ are all determinants, hence $E_{\lambda\mu\nu}$ is antisymmetrical in all its three indices. It is then easily seen that the real number

$$k_{\kappa\lambda\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{i}\,\bar{E}_\kappa \cdot E_{\lambda\mu\nu} \qquad (24.24)$$

is also antisymmetrical in all its four indices. Let k denote the determinant of the matrix ${}^\alpha t_\beta$, that is

$$k = \mathrm{Det}({}^\alpha t_\beta) = \delta^{\kappa\lambda\mu\nu}_{0123}\,{}^\circ t_\kappa\,{}^1 t_\lambda\,{}^2 t_\mu\,{}^3 t_\nu \qquad (24.25)$$

where $\delta^{\kappa\lambda\mu\nu}_{0123}$ is equal to one or minus one according to whether $(\kappa\lambda\mu\nu)$ is an even or odd permutation of (0 1 2 3). With the help of (24.23) we find that

$$k = -k_{0123} = -\frac{1}{i}\,\bar{E}_0 \cdot E_{123}\,. \qquad (24.26)$$

Multiplication of both sides by E^κ and summation over the index κ gives

$$E_{\lambda\mu\nu} = i\,k_{\kappa\lambda\mu\nu}\,E^\kappa \qquad (24.27)$$

which is the second identity we were looking for. Combining (24.21) and (24.27) we obtain

$$E_\lambda \bar{E}_\mu E_\nu = G_{\lambda\mu\nu} + E_{\lambda\mu\nu} = g_{\lambda\mu} E_\nu + g_{\mu\nu} E_\lambda - g_{\nu\lambda} E_\mu + i k_{\pi\lambda\mu\nu} E^\pi \qquad (24.28)$$

The determinant k depends only on the metric tensor $g_{\mu\nu}$ since

$$g = \mathrm{Det}(g_{\mu\nu}) = \mathrm{Det}(\gamma_{\alpha\beta} {}^\alpha t_\mu {}^\beta t_\nu) = (\mathrm{Det}\, \gamma_{\alpha\beta})(\mathrm{Det}\, {}^\alpha t_\mu)^2$$

and hence, from (24.2) and (24.25)

$$g = -k^2 \quad \text{or} \quad k = (-g)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \qquad (24.29)$$

Since $k_{\pi\lambda\mu\nu}$ is a tensor, its suffices can be raised by means of the tensor $g^{\alpha\beta}$. Thus

$$k^{0123} = k_{\pi\lambda\mu\nu}\, g^{0\pi}\, g^{1\lambda}\, g^{2\mu}\, g^{3\nu}.$$

On the other hand

$$k_{\pi\lambda\mu\nu} = k_{0123}\, \delta^{0123}_{\pi\lambda\mu\nu} = -k\, \delta^{0123}_{\pi\lambda\mu\nu},$$

Therefore

$$k^{0123} = -k\, \delta^{0123}_{\pi\lambda\mu\nu}\, g^{0\pi}\, g^{1\lambda}\, g^{2\mu}\, g^{3\nu} = -k\, \mathrm{Det}(g^{\mu\nu})$$

But, from (24.12) and (24.29)

$$\mathrm{Det}(g^{\mu\nu}) = g^{-1} = -k^{-2}$$

hence

$$k^{0123} \equiv k^{-1}.$$

In the same manner it can be proved that

$$k^{\pi\lambda\mu\nu} = -(k_{\pi\lambda\mu\nu})^{-1}$$

since

$$k^{\pi\lambda\mu\nu} = k^{0123}\, \delta^{\pi\lambda\mu\nu}_{0123} = k^{-1}\, \delta^{\pi\lambda\mu\nu}_{0123}.$$

It can also be shown, from the properties of the generalized

Kronecker symbols that

$$k^{\alpha\lambda\mu\nu} k_{\beta\lambda\mu\nu} = -3!\,\delta^{\alpha}_{\beta}. \tag{24.30}$$

Hence, from (24.27) we derive the relation

$$3!E^{k} = -\frac{1}{i}\epsilon_{\lambda\mu\nu}k^{\varkappa\lambda\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{i}\sum_{\nu}\epsilon_{\lambda\mu\nu}(k_{\varkappa\lambda\mu\nu})^{-1} \tag{24.31}$$

To conclude this section two more identities related to basis quaternions will be given. The first of these is

$$\epsilon_{\alpha}\bar{A}\epsilon^{\alpha} = -2A \tag{24.32}$$

where A is any hermitian quaternion. The proof is as follows: we can always write

$$A = \epsilon^{\nu}a_{\mu}.$$

As a special case of (24.21) we have

$$\epsilon_{\alpha}\bar{\epsilon}^{\nu}\epsilon^{\alpha} = 2\mathcal{H}(\epsilon_{\alpha}\bar{\epsilon}^{\nu}\epsilon^{\alpha}) = 2\epsilon^{\nu} - \delta^{\alpha}_{\alpha}\epsilon^{\nu} = -2\epsilon^{\nu},$$

hence (24.31) follows.

The other identity is that, if $\underline{\omega}$ is an arbitrary purely vectorial complex quaternion, then

$$\bar{\epsilon}^{\alpha}\underline{\omega}\epsilon_{\alpha} = \bar{\epsilon}_{\alpha}\underline{\omega}\epsilon^{\alpha} = 0 \tag{24.33}$$

This follows from the obvious identity

$$\bar{I}_{\alpha}\underline{\omega}I^{\alpha} = 0$$

if we use (24.15) and (24.13).

---

§25. The affine space-time of distant parallelism. The torsion tensor.

In flat space the sixteen functions ${}^{\alpha}t_{\beta}$ which define a coordinate transformation are not arbitrary but derive from four real functions f^{α} (24.5). If we put

$$X = I_{\alpha}\xi^{\alpha} = I_{\alpha} f^{\alpha}(x^0, x^1, x^2, x^3)$$

the equations (24.5) may be written as

$$\epsilon_{\alpha} = \partial_{\alpha} X \qquad (25.1)$$

where $\partial_{\alpha} = \partial/\partial x^{\alpha}$ and the differential quaternion (24.7) is seen to be integrable, since

$$dX = dx^{\alpha}\,\partial_{\alpha} X$$

From (25.1) it follows that the basis vectors in flat space satisfy the condition

$$\partial_{\alpha}\epsilon_{\beta} - \partial_{\beta}\epsilon_{\alpha} = 0 \qquad (25.2)$$

We now define a frame of reference which varies from point to point by means of sixteen arbitrary real functions, or by the four arbitrary hermitian basis vectors ϵ_{α} given by (24.6). This generalized coordinate system will not correspond to a coordinate transformation (24.3) since (25.2) is not satisfied and (24.7) is not integrable. A hermitian quaternion A, referred to this frame of reference will have coordinates a^{α} so that the functions ${}^{a}t_{\beta}$ may be regarded as characterizing the geometry of a space based on such coordinates

Now a reciprocal frame of reference may be defined at each point by means of the functions $_{\alpha}t^{\beta}$ given by (24.13) associated with the contravariant basis vectors E^{β} which are given by (24.16). We have shown that (24.16) can be solved directly and the contravariant basis quaternions expressed in terms of the covariant quaternions E_{α} by means of the formula (24.31). Having defined the two reciprocal frames by E^{α} and $\bar{E}_{\alpha}$, after scalar multiplication of both sides of (24.18) by $\bar{E}_{\beta}$ we derive the relation between covariant and contravariant components of A, namely

$$a_{\alpha} = (E_{\alpha} . \bar{E}_{\beta})\, a^{\beta} .$$

Since this is the rule for lowering the indices it is natural to define the metric in this space by

$$g_{\alpha\beta} = E_{\alpha} . \bar{E}_{\beta} = \tfrac{1}{2}(E_{\alpha}\bar{E}_{\beta} + \bar{E}_{\beta}E_{\alpha}) . \qquad (25.3)$$

The relation (24.15) follows from this definition, hence the indices of the basis vectors are also raised and lowered by means of the metric tensor (25.3) and the reciprocal metric tensor is given by

$$g^{\alpha\beta} = E^{\alpha} . \bar{E}^{\beta}$$

It must be pointed out that although the metric (25.3) is the most convenient, other symmetrical tensors could also be introduced to define the metric.

If the origin of the vector A is moved to a neighbouring point by the amount and direction specified by dX, the basis

vectors at this point will differ from the basis vectors at the original point by

$$d\epsilon_\beta = \Gamma^\gamma_{\alpha\beta}\,\epsilon_\gamma\,dx^\alpha \qquad (25.4)$$

where the scalar quantities $\Gamma^\gamma_{\alpha\beta}$ are the coefficients of the affine connection. As ϵ_β are given functions of x^α, (25.4) is integrable and we can write

$$d\epsilon_\beta = (\partial_\alpha \epsilon_\beta)\,dx^\alpha .$$

Hence the 64 coefficients $\Gamma^\gamma_{\alpha\beta}$ are not arbitrary but satisfy the condition

$$\partial_\alpha \epsilon_\beta = \Gamma^\gamma_{\alpha\beta}\,\epsilon_\gamma . \qquad (25.5)$$

Using (24.16) we get

$$\Gamma^\gamma_{\alpha\beta} = \bar{\epsilon}^\gamma \cdot \partial_\alpha \epsilon_\beta = \not{g}_\mu t^\gamma \quad \partial_\alpha \quad {}^\mu t_\beta \qquad (25.6)$$

In flat space where (25.1) is satisfied we have the relation

$$\Gamma^\gamma_{\alpha\beta} = (g^{\gamma\varepsilon}\partial_\varepsilon \bar{X}) \cdot \partial_\alpha \partial_\beta X$$

which shows that in this case $\Gamma^\gamma_{\alpha\beta}$ are symmetrical in their lower indices.

We now define the parallel displacement of the vector A as in the case of flat space-time by assuming that in the displacement dX the vector A has suffered no change. Thus for a parallel displacement we must have

$$d(\epsilon_\alpha a^\alpha) = 0$$

or, using (25.4)

$$\epsilon_\gamma\left(\Gamma^\gamma_{\alpha\beta}\,a^\beta\,dx^\alpha + da^\gamma\right) = 0 ,$$

vectors as defining a frame of reference varying from point to point in flat space.

The connection between the metric tensor and the coefficients $\Gamma^{\gamma}_{\alpha\beta}$ is found by differentiating (25.3) and using (25.5). It is given by

$$\partial_\varepsilon g_{\alpha\beta} = \Gamma^{\gamma}_{\varepsilon\beta} g_{\alpha\gamma} + \Gamma^{\gamma}_{\varepsilon\alpha} g_{\beta\gamma} . \qquad (25.10)$$

We have seen that the condition for dX to be a perfect differential is expressed by (25.2) which can also be written

$$(\Gamma^{\gamma}_{\alpha\beta} - \Gamma^{\gamma}_{\beta\alpha})\, \epsilon_\gamma = 0 . \qquad (25.11)$$

It is proved easily (cf. Eisenhart p.) that

$$\Lambda_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\Gamma^{\gamma}_{\alpha\beta} - \Gamma^{\gamma}_{\beta\alpha}) \qquad (25.12)$$

is a tensor of the third rank. It is antisymmetrical in its lower indices and is called the torsion tensor. Its indices are here written on different vertical lines to enable us to raise and lower them separately. The condition (25.11) for the space to be Euclidian can now be written

$$\Lambda_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} = 0 \qquad (25.13)$$

From (25.10) we can now derive the relation

$$\Gamma^{\gamma}_{\alpha\beta} = \left\{ {\gamma \atop \alpha\beta} \right\} + B_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} \qquad (25.14)$$

where the tensor

$$B_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} = \Lambda_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} - \Lambda_{\alpha\cdot\beta}^{\cdot\gamma\cdot} - \Lambda_{\beta\cdot\alpha}^{\cdot\gamma\cdot} \qquad (25.15)$$

is the same as Ricci's rotation coefficients. Ricci's tensor has the property

$$B_{\alpha,\beta\gamma} = - B_{\alpha,\gamma\beta} \qquad (25.16)$$

since

$$B_{\alpha,\beta\gamma} = \Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\gamma} - \Lambda_{\beta\gamma,\alpha} - \Lambda_{\alpha\gamma,\beta} .$$

Other obvious properties of the torsion tensor and the Ricci tensor are expressed by

$$\Lambda^{\alpha}_{\cdot\,\alpha\gamma} = g^{\alpha\beta}\Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\gamma} = 0$$

$$B^{\cdot\,\beta}_{\alpha,\beta\cdot} = g^{\beta\gamma}B_{\alpha,\beta\gamma} = 0 .$$

Contracting the tensors $\Lambda^{\cdot\,\cdot\,\gamma}_{\alpha\beta\cdot}$ and $B^{\alpha\,\cdot\,\cdot}_{\cdot\,\beta\gamma}$ we find the 4-vectors

$$\Lambda_\beta = \Lambda^{\cdot\,\cdot\,\alpha}_{\beta\alpha\cdot} = \Lambda^{\cdot\,\alpha\,\cdot}_{\beta\,\cdot\,\alpha} \qquad (25.17)$$

and

$$B_\beta = B^{\alpha\,\cdot\,\cdot}_{\cdot\,\beta\alpha} = B^{\cdot\,\cdot\,\alpha}_{\alpha\beta\,\cdot} \qquad (25.18)$$

which are related by the relation

$$B_\beta = -2\Lambda_\beta . \qquad (25.19)$$

Two more 4-vectors may be derived from the torsion tensor and the Ricci tensor by means of the antisymmetrical tensor of the fourth rank $k^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma}$ of the preceding section. They are (the factor ¼ will prove useful)

$$L^\varepsilon = \frac{1}{4}k^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma}\Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\gamma} = \frac{1}{8}k^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma}(\Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\gamma} - \Lambda_{\alpha\gamma,\beta}) \qquad (25.20)$$

and

$$R^\varepsilon = k^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma}B_{\alpha,\beta\gamma} = \frac{1}{2}k^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma}(B_{\alpha,\beta\gamma} - B_{\beta,\alpha\gamma}) . \qquad (25.21)$$

We find, from (25.15)

$$R^\varepsilon = k^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma}(\Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\gamma} - \Lambda_{\beta\gamma,\alpha} - \Lambda_{\alpha\gamma,\beta}) = 4L^\varepsilon \qquad (25.22)$$

since the contributions from the second and the third terms in the bracketted expression cancel one another. To sum up, whether we start from the torsion tensor or the Ricci

tensor we find the two important 4-vectors Λ_α and L^α.

The space-time of distant parallelism was first introduced into physics by Einstein (1928). In flat space we were able to find the cartesian coordinates $\overset{*}{a}$ of a vector with curvilinear coordinates a^α by means of the formula (24.19). In the same way, from the generalized coordinates a^α we can derive the invariants

$$\overset{*}{a} = \overset{\alpha}{t}_\beta a^\beta$$

which are called "Bein-components" (Einstein) or "ennuple components" (Kilmister 1949). We shall call them the invariant components of the vector A. In flat space two vectors at distant points are regarded as parallel and congruent if their cartesian components are the same. Similarly in the space of distant parallelism two vectors are regarded as congruent if their invariant components are equal. In particular the invariant components are kept constant in a parallel displacement. In the Unitary theory proposed by Einstein in 1928 the 4-vector Λ_α was interpreted as the electromagnetic pectential 4-vector. We shall discuss this interpretation in §32 in connection with the transformation properties of Dirac's equation.

§26. The two covariant differentiations w_α and Δ_α. Differential equations satisfied by the fundamental quate nions

In the space-time of distant parallelism introduced in the preceding section we define the affine covariant derivative of a tensor $T_{\alpha\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\mu\ldots}$ with respect to the generalized coordinate x^ε by

$$w_\varepsilon T_{\alpha\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\mu\ldots} = \partial_\varepsilon T_{\alpha\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\mu\ldots} - \Gamma_{\varepsilon\alpha}^{\gamma} T_{\gamma\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\mu\ldots} - \Gamma_{\varepsilon\beta}^{\gamma} T_{\alpha\gamma\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\mu\ldots} + \Gamma_{\varepsilon\gamma}^{\lambda} T_{\alpha\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\gamma\mu\ldots} + \Gamma_{\varepsilon\gamma}^{\mu} T_{\alpha\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\gamma\ldots} \qquad (26.1)$$

and the metric covariant derivative of the same tensor by

$$\Delta_\varepsilon T_{\alpha\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\mu\ldots} = \partial_\varepsilon T_{\alpha\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\mu\ldots} - \left\{{\gamma \atop \varepsilon\alpha}\right\} T_{\gamma\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\mu\ldots} - \left\{{\gamma \atop \varepsilon\beta}\right\} T_{\alpha\gamma\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\mu\ldots} + \left\{{\lambda \atop \varepsilon\gamma}\right\} T_{\alpha\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\gamma\mu\ldots} + \left\{{\mu \atop \varepsilon\gamma}\right\} T_{\alpha\beta\ldots}^{\ldots\lambda\gamma\ldots} \qquad (26.2)$$

where is given by (25.9) and by (25.6). The two coefficients are related by (25.14) where $B_{\alpha\beta}^{\ldots\gamma}$ is given by (25.15) in terms of the torsion tensor. For integrable coordinate systems in flat space the torsion tensor and the Ricci tensor vanish and we have

$$\Delta_\varepsilon = w_\varepsilon$$

But in the space of distant parallelism, from a given tensor we can derive two different tensors by means of the two types of differentiation. With these definitions it follows from (25.5) that

$$w_\alpha E_\beta = 0 \qquad (26.3)$$

that, is the covariant affine derivatives of the basis vectors vanish identically. We also find

$$w_\alpha E^\beta = 0 \tag{26.4}$$

If the vector A is subject to a parallel displacement, we have, from (25.7) and from the similar relation for

$$w_\alpha a^\beta = w_\alpha a_\beta = 0 \tag{26.5}$$

Thus the affine derivatives of the components of a vector vanish in a parallel displacement. (25.10) can also be written

$$w_\varepsilon g_{\alpha\beta} = 0 \tag{26.6}$$

The corresponding results for the metric derivation are

$$\Delta_\alpha E_\beta = B_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} E_\gamma \tag{26.7}$$

$$\Delta_\alpha E^\gamma = -B_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} E^\beta \tag{26.8}$$

for the basis vectors the metric derivatives of which are seen not to vanish. The rotation tensor was defined by Ricci by means of (26.7). In a parallel displacement, we have

$$\Delta_\alpha a_\beta = B_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} a_\gamma$$

$$\Delta_\alpha a^\gamma = -B_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} a^\beta \tag{26.9}$$

and the metric tensor satisfies the identity

$$\Delta_\varepsilon g_{\alpha\beta} = B_{\varepsilon\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} g_{\alpha\gamma} + B_{\varepsilon\alpha}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} g_{\beta\gamma} = 0 \quad \text{from (25.16)} \tag{26.10}$$

It is well known that both types of covariant derivative are distributive with respect to the ordinary multiplication

of scalar tensors. We now proceed to show that covariant derivation is also distributive with respect to quaternion multiplication of tensorial quaternions.

Let ${}^{r}p_{\alpha}$ be a set of four ($\mu = 0, 1, 2, 3$) 4-vectors. From these sixteen quantities we can construct the four quaternions

$$P_{\alpha} = I_{\mu}\, {}^{\mu}p_{\alpha}$$

which are seen to transform like the basis vectors E_{α}. We call them covariant quaternions of the first rank. Similarly, from a tensor

$${}^{\lambda\mu}T^{\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

we can construct the contravariant quaternions of the third rank

$$Q^{\alpha\beta\gamma} = I_{\lambda}\bar{I}_{\mu}\,{}^{\lambda\mu}T^{\alpha\beta\gamma} \quad \text{or} \quad R^{\alpha\beta\gamma} = I_{\lambda}I_{\mu}\,{}^{\lambda\mu}T^{\alpha\beta\gamma}.$$

Now let P_{α} denote a set of covariant quaternions of the first rank and Q^{α} contravariant quaternions of the first rank. We define covariant differentiation of a tensorial quaternion in the same way as in (26.1) and (26.2). Hence

$$w_{\varepsilon}(P_{\alpha}Q^{\beta}) = \partial_{\varepsilon}(P_{\alpha}Q^{\beta}) - \Gamma^{\gamma}_{\varepsilon\alpha}P_{\gamma}Q^{\beta} + \Gamma^{\beta}_{\varepsilon\gamma}P_{\alpha}Q^{\gamma}$$

and since

$$\partial_{\varepsilon}(P_{\alpha}Q^{\beta}) = 0,$$

we obtain

$$w_{\varepsilon}(P_{\alpha}Q^{\beta}) = (w_{\varepsilon}P_{\alpha})Q^{\beta} + P_{\alpha}(w_{\varepsilon}Q^{\beta}). \qquad (26.11)$$

A similar proof holds for the differentiation Δ_ε and for the multiplication of two general tensorial quaternions of arbitrary rank.

With the help of this simple theorem we shall now derive some differentiil quaternion identities that hold in the space-time of distant parallelism. First let us call fundamental quaternions the tensorial quaternions derived from the basis vectors by means of quaternion multiplication.

Thus the fundamental quaternions of the first rank are the basis quaternions ε_α.

From the product $\varepsilon_\alpha \bar{\varepsilon}_\beta$ we can derive two fundamental quaternions of the second rank. The first is the symmetrical part of this product and is identical with the scalar metric tensor $g_{\alpha\beta}$. The second is the antisymmetrical part of the product. It is a purely vectorial quaternion and will be denoted by

$$\underset{_}{\varepsilon}_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2}(\varepsilon_\alpha \bar{\varepsilon}_\beta - \varepsilon_\beta \bar{\varepsilon}_\alpha) \tag{26.12}$$

Hence we can write

$$\varepsilon_\alpha \bar{\varepsilon}_\beta = g_{\alpha\beta} + \underset{_}{\varepsilon}_{\alpha\beta} \tag{26.13}$$

From the product $\varepsilon_\alpha \bar{\varepsilon}_\beta \varepsilon_\gamma$ which can be written

$$\varepsilon_\alpha \bar{\varepsilon}_\beta \varepsilon_\gamma = G_{\alpha\beta\gamma} + \varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

we have already derived the hermitian quaternion $G_{\alpha\beta\gamma}$ symmetrical in α and γ and given by (24.21) and the anti-hermitian quaternion $\varepsilon_{\alpha\beta\gamma}$ antisymmetrical in all its indices

and given by (24.27).

Similarly we can derive other fundamental quaternions of the fourth rank from the product $\epsilon_\alpha \bar{\epsilon}_\beta \epsilon_\gamma \bar{\epsilon}_\varepsilon$. The most important of these is the scalar quaternion $k_{\alpha\beta\gamma\varepsilon}$ anti-symmetrical in all its indices and whose absolute value is given by (24.25) or (24.29).. It is the imaginary part of the scalar part of $\epsilon_\alpha \bar{\epsilon}_\beta \epsilon_\gamma \bar{\epsilon}_\varepsilon$.

Now from (26.11) we obtain

$$w_\varepsilon \epsilon_\alpha \bar{\epsilon}_\beta = w_\varepsilon \epsilon^\alpha \bar{\epsilon}^\beta = 0$$

The scalar part of one of these equations gives the identity (26.6) and the vectorial part gives

$$w_\varepsilon \underline{\epsilon}^{\alpha\beta} = 0 \qquad (26.14)$$

We also find $w_\varepsilon k_{\alpha\beta\gamma\varphi} = 4 \Gamma^\mu_{\varepsilon\alpha} k_{\mu\beta\gamma\varphi}$.

Multiplying both sides by $k^{\alpha\beta\gamma\varphi}$ and using (24.30) we have

$$k^{\alpha\beta\gamma\varphi} \partial_\varepsilon k_{\alpha\beta\gamma\varphi} = -4! \Gamma^\mu_{\varepsilon\mu}$$

and from (24.26)

$$k^{-1} \partial_\varepsilon k = \Gamma^\mu_{\varepsilon\mu} .$$

But, since

$$B_{\varepsilon\mu}{}^{\mu}{}_{\cdot} = 0$$

we have, from (25.14)

$$k^{-1} \partial_\varepsilon k = \left\{ \varepsilon^\mu_\mu \right\} . \qquad (26.15)$$

We now have

$$\Delta_\varepsilon \epsilon^\varepsilon = \partial_\varepsilon \epsilon^\varepsilon + \left\{ \varepsilon^\mu_\mu \right\} \epsilon^\varepsilon = k^{-1} \partial_\varepsilon k \epsilon^\varepsilon .$$

But from (26.8) and (25.19)

$$\Delta_\varepsilon E^\varepsilon = -B_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\alpha} E^\beta = 2\Lambda_{\beta\alpha}^{\cdot\cdot\alpha} E^\beta = 2\Lambda_\beta E^\beta \tag{26.16}$$

Similarly we find

$$\Delta_\alpha \underline{E}^{\alpha\beta} = k^{-1}\partial_\alpha k \underline{E}^{\alpha\beta} = 2\Lambda_\alpha \underline{E}^{\alpha\beta} - \Lambda_{\mu\nu}^{\cdot\cdot\beta}\underline{E}^{\mu\nu} \tag{26.17}$$

and

$$\Delta_\alpha \underline{E}_{\beta\gamma} + \Delta_\beta \underline{E}_{\gamma\alpha} + \Delta_\gamma \underline{E}_{\alpha\beta} = \partial_\alpha \underline{E}_{\beta\gamma} + \partial_\beta \underline{E}_{\gamma\alpha} + \partial_\gamma \underline{E}_{\alpha\beta}$$
$$= 2(\Lambda_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\varepsilon}\underline{E}_{\varepsilon\gamma} + \Lambda_{\beta\gamma}^{\cdot\cdot\varepsilon}\underline{E}_{\varepsilon\alpha} + \Lambda_{\gamma\alpha}^{\cdot\cdot\varepsilon}\underline{E}_{\varepsilon\beta}) \tag{26.18}$$

It is seen that if the torsion tensor vanishes we have

$$\partial_\varepsilon k E^\varepsilon = 0 \tag{26.19}$$

and each component of the quaternion $\underline{E}_{\alpha\beta}$ obeys Maxwell's equations in vacuum. $\underline{\bar{E}}_{\alpha\beta}$ is given by

$$\underline{\bar{E}}_{\alpha\beta} = \mathcal{V}(\bar{E}_\alpha \bar{E}_\beta) = \tfrac{1}{2} I_\mu \bar{I}_\nu ({}^\mu t_\alpha {}^\nu t_\beta - {}^\mu t_\beta {}^\nu t_\alpha)$$

so that for instance

$$f_{\alpha\beta} = \tfrac{1}{2}({}^0 t_\alpha {}^3 t_\beta - {}^0 t_\beta {}^3 t_\alpha)$$

is a solution of Maxwell's equations in vacuum if the torsion tensor corresponding to ${}^\mu t_\alpha$ vanishes.

Besides tensorial quaternions we can also consider unvariant quaternions. Let, for example $T_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma}$ denote a tensor. Then the quaternion

$$Q = \epsilon^\alpha \bar{E}^\beta E_\gamma T_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} \tag{26.20}$$

will be an ivariant. Of course other invariant quaternions may be contructed by means of such a tensor. Each complex component of Q, namely

$$ {}_{\lambda}q = \bar{I}_{\lambda} . Q = {}_{\lambda}\bar{E} . Q $$

will represent some invariant derived from $T_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdots\delta}$ by means of the functions ${}^{r}t_{\alpha}$. The components of each quaternion will be eight invariants derived from the original tensor. For instance from the symmetrical tensor $S_{\alpha\beta}$ we can derive the invariant scalar

$$ \epsilon^{\alpha}\bar{\epsilon}^{\beta} S_{\alpha\beta} = g^{\alpha\beta} S_{\alpha\beta} = S_{\alpha}^{\cdot\alpha} . $$

which is the contracted form of $S_{\alpha}{}^{\beta}$, or the four invariant components of the hermitian quaternion

$$ S = \epsilon^{\alpha}\epsilon^{\beta} S_{\alpha\beta} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\epsilon^{\alpha}\epsilon^{\beta} + \epsilon^{\beta}\epsilon^{\alpha}) S_{\alpha\beta} $$

We have

$$ \begin{aligned} S &= \tfrac{1}{2}(I^{\mu}I^{\nu} + I^{\nu}I^{\mu})\, {}_{\mu}t^{\alpha}\, {}_{\nu}t^{\beta}\, S_{\alpha\beta} \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(I^{\mu}I^{\nu} + I^{\nu}I^{\mu})\, {}_{\mu\nu}S \end{aligned} $$

If we put

$$ {}^{\mu\nu}_{\lambda}\eta = \tfrac{1}{2}\bar{I}_{\lambda} . (I^{\mu}I^{\nu} + I^{\nu}I^{\mu}) \qquad (26.21) $$

then the four invariants that we can derive from $S_{\alpha\beta}$ are

$$ {}_{\lambda}S = ({}^{\mu\nu}_{\lambda}\eta)({}_{\mu\nu}S) = ({}^{\mu\nu}_{\lambda}\eta)\, {}_{\mu}t^{\alpha}\, {}_{\nu}t^{\beta}\, S_{\alpha\beta} $$

Differentiation of the invariant quaternion (26.20) gives

$$ \partial_{\varepsilon} Q = w_{\varepsilon} Q = (w_{\varepsilon}\epsilon^{\alpha}\bar{\epsilon}^{\beta}\epsilon_{\gamma})\, T_{\alpha\beta}{}^{\gamma} + \epsilon^{\alpha}\bar{\epsilon}^{\beta}\epsilon_{\gamma}\, w_{\varepsilon} T_{\alpha\beta}{}^{\gamma} $$

and since the first term vanish we have

$$ \partial_{\varepsilon} Q = w_{\varepsilon}\{\epsilon^{\alpha}\bar{\epsilon}^{\beta}\epsilon_{\gamma} T_{\alpha\beta}{}^{\gamma}\} = \epsilon^{\alpha}\bar{\epsilon}^{\beta}\epsilon_{\gamma}\, w_{\varepsilon} T_{\alpha\beta}{}^{\gamma} , \qquad (26.22) $$

that is the affine differentiation operator commutes with fundamental quate nions. We shall make constant use of this property.

§27. Further identities satisfied by the fundamental quaternions. Tensor components of invariant quaternions.

Before deriving certain algebraic identities we define duality. Consider the vector components a_ε, the antisymmetrical tensor $b_{\rho\sigma}$ and the antisymmetrical tensor of the third rank $c_{\rho\sigma\tau}$. Duality will be defined by means of the antisymmetrical tensors of the fourth rank $k_{\alpha\rho\sigma\varepsilon}$ and $k^{\alpha\rho\sigma\varepsilon}$ that we have introduced in §24. Thus:

$$\text{dual } a_\varepsilon = \tilde{a}^{\alpha\rho\sigma} = k^{\alpha\rho\sigma\varepsilon} a_\varepsilon \tag{27.1}$$

$$\text{dual } b_{\rho\sigma} = \tilde{b}^{\alpha\rho} = \frac{1}{2!} k^{\alpha\rho\rho\sigma} b_{\rho\sigma} \tag{27.2}$$

$$\text{dual } c_{\rho\sigma\tau} = \tilde{c}^{\alpha} = \frac{1}{3!} k^{\alpha\rho\sigma\tau} c_{\rho\sigma\tau} \tag{27.3}$$

or, on lowering and raising the indices

$$\text{dual } a^\varepsilon = \tilde{a}_{\alpha\rho\sigma} = k_{\alpha\rho\sigma\varepsilon} a^\varepsilon \tag{27.4}$$

$$\text{dual } b^{\rho\sigma} = \tilde{b}_{\alpha\rho} = \frac{1}{2!} k_{\alpha\rho\rho\sigma} b^{\rho\sigma} \tag{27.5}$$

$$\text{dual } c^{\rho\sigma\tau} = \tilde{c}_{\alpha} = \frac{1}{3!} k_{\alpha\rho\sigma\tau} c^{\rho\sigma\tau} \tag{27.6}$$

With these definitions, from (24.30) we derive

$$\text{dual dual } a_\varepsilon = \text{dual } \tilde{a}^{\alpha\rho\sigma} = \frac{1}{3!} k_{\varepsilon\alpha\rho\tau} k^{\alpha\rho\tau\sigma} a_\sigma = a_\varepsilon$$

$$\text{dual dual } b_{\rho\sigma} = \frac{1}{2!} \text{dual } k^{\alpha\rho\lambda\mu} b_{\lambda\mu} = \frac{1}{2!} k_{\rho\sigma\alpha\rho} k^{\alpha\rho\lambda\mu} b_{\lambda\mu}$$

But we have

$$k_{\rho\sigma\alpha\rho} = -k \delta^{0123}_{\rho\sigma\alpha\beta} \tag{27.7}$$

and

$$k^{\alpha\rho\lambda\mu} = k^{-1} \delta^{\alpha\rho\lambda\mu}_{0123} \tag{27.7}$$

Hence, using the properties of the generalized Kronecker symbols (cf. Brand pp. 353, 369) we find

$$k_{\rho\sigma\alpha\beta}\, k^{\lambda\mu\alpha\beta} = -\,\delta^{\lambda\mu\alpha\beta}_{\rho\sigma\alpha\beta} = -2!\,\delta^{\lambda\mu}_{\rho\sigma}$$

where

$$\delta^{\lambda\mu}_{\rho\sigma} = (\delta^{\lambda}_{\rho}\,\delta^{\mu}_{\sigma} - \delta^{\lambda}_{\sigma}\,\delta^{\mu}_{\rho})$$

Hence

$$\text{dual dual } b_{\rho\sigma} = -\,b_{\rho\sigma}$$

When applied to fundamental quaternions the same definitions give

$$\text{dual } \underline{e}_{\varepsilon} = k^{\alpha\beta\gamma\varepsilon}\,\underline{e}_{\varepsilon} = \frac{1}{i}\,\underline{e}^{\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

so that we have

$$\tilde{\underline{e}}^{\alpha\beta\gamma} = -i\,\underline{e}^{\alpha\beta\gamma}, \text{ or, } \underline{e}_{\alpha\beta\gamma} = i\,\tilde{\underline{e}}_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \qquad (27.8)$$

We know wish to prove the following important result:

$$\tilde{\underline{e}}_{\alpha\beta} = \text{dual } \underline{e}^{\rho\sigma} = \frac{1}{2!}\,k_{\alpha\beta\rho\sigma}\,\underline{e}^{\rho\sigma} = -i\,\underline{e}_{\alpha\beta} \qquad (27.9)$$

which is of the same form as (27.8). $\tilde{\underline{e}}_{\alpha\beta}$ is defined by

$$\tilde{\underline{e}}_{\alpha\beta} = \text{dual } \underline{e}_{\rho\sigma} = \frac{1}{2!}\,k_{\alpha\beta\rho\sigma}\,\underline{e}^{\rho\sigma} \qquad (27.10)$$

To prove (27.9) we need the lemma

$$\underline{e}_{\alpha\beta}\,.\,\underline{e}_{\rho\sigma} = (g_{\alpha\sigma}g_{\beta\rho} - g_{\alpha\rho}g_{\beta\sigma}) - i\,k_{\alpha\beta\rho\sigma} \qquad (27.11)$$

which is proved by replacing $\underline{e}_{\alpha\beta}$ by its expression (26.12) and by using the identity (24.20). Now let $f^{\alpha\beta}$ denote an arbitrary real antisymmetrical tensor and consider the vectorial invariant quaternion

$$\underline{F} = \frac{1}{2}\,\underline{e}_{\alpha\beta}\,f^{\alpha\beta}\,.$$

We have, using (27.11) and the definition (27.5)

$$\underline{e}_{\rho\sigma}\,.\,\underline{F} = \frac{1}{2}\,(\underline{e}_{\alpha\beta}\,.\,\underline{e}_{\rho\sigma})\,f^{\alpha\beta} = (f_{\sigma\rho} - i\,\tilde{f}_{\rho\sigma}) \qquad (27.12)$$

Hence we can write

$$\underline{F} = \tfrac{1}{2}\underline{E}_{\alpha\beta} f^{\alpha\beta} = \tfrac{1}{4}\underline{E}^{\sigma\sigma}\mathcal{R}\{\underline{E}_{\sigma\sigma}\bullet\underline{E}_{\alpha\beta} f^{\alpha\beta}\}$$

Similarly the quaternion $i\underline{F}$ is represented by

$$\tfrac{1}{2} i\underline{E}_{\alpha\beta} f^{\alpha\beta} = \underline{E}^{\sigma\sigma}\mathcal{R}\{\underline{E}_{\sigma\sigma}\cdot i\underline{E}_{\alpha\beta} f^{\alpha\beta}\} = \tfrac{1}{4}\underline{E}^{\sigma\sigma} k_{\sigma\sigma\alpha\beta} f^{\alpha\beta}$$

or, on using (27.10)

$$i\underline{F} = \tfrac{1}{2} i\underline{E}_{\alpha\beta} f^{\alpha\beta} = \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{\underline{E}}_{\alpha\beta} f^{\alpha\beta},$$

so that for an arbitrary tensor $f^{\alpha\beta}$ we must have

$$(\underline{E}_{\alpha\beta} - i\tilde{\underline{E}}_{\alpha\beta}) f^{\alpha\beta} = 0,$$

and this proves (27.9).

We now come to our main result:

Any invariant quaternion Q may be expressed in one of the forms

$$Q = \underline{e}_\alpha a^\alpha + \tfrac{1}{3!}\underline{e}^{\lambda\mu\nu} b_{\lambda\mu\nu} \qquad (27.13)$$

or

$$Q = u + i\tfrac{1}{4!} k^{\lambda\mu\nu\varepsilon} v_{\lambda\mu\nu\varepsilon} + \tfrac{1}{2}\underline{E}^{\sigma\sigma} f_{\sigma\sigma} \qquad (27.14)$$

where a^α represents a real 4-vector, $b_{\lambda\mu\nu}$ a real antisymmetrical tensor of rank 3, u a real invariant scalar, $v_{\lambda\mu\nu\varepsilon}$ a real scalar antisymmetrical tensor of rank 4 and $f_{\sigma\sigma}$ a real antisymmetrical tensor of rank 2.

To prove (27.13) we multiply both sides scalarly by $\bar{E}^\sigma$:

$$\bar{E}^\sigma . Q = a^\sigma - i\tfrac{1}{3!} k^{\sigma\lambda\mu\nu} b_{\lambda\mu\nu} = a^\sigma - i\tilde{b}^\sigma$$

Hence a^σ and $\tilde{b}^\sigma$ (hence $b_{\lambda\mu\nu}$) are determined uniquely by the relations

$$a^s = \mathcal{R}(\bar{E}^s . Q)$$
$$\tilde{b}^s = \mathcal{R}(i\bar{E}^s . Q).$$

The dual vector of an antisymmetrical tensor of rank 3 is a pseudo-vector. Therefore any complex quaternion may be regarded as having vector and pseudo-vector components. Its hermitian part corresponds to the vector and its anti-hermitian part corresponds to the pseudovector.

In the relation (27.14), the dual quantity

$$\tilde{v} = \frac{1}{4!} k^{\lambda\mu\nu\epsilon} v_{\lambda\mu\nu\epsilon} \qquad (27.15)$$

of the antisymmetrical tensor of the fourth rank is a pseudo-scalar. u and $\tilde{v}$ are determined uniquely by

$$u + i\tilde{v} = \mathcal{S}(Q), \qquad (27.16)$$

and from (27.12) $f_{\alpha\beta}$ is determined by

$$f_{\alpha\beta} = -\mathcal{R}(\underline{\varepsilon}_{\alpha\beta} . \underline{F})$$

where

$$\underline{F} = \mathcal{V}(Q). \qquad (27.17)$$

Hence any invariant quaternion may be also regarded as having an invariant scalar component, a pseudo-invariant scalar component and real antisymmetrical tensor components. The first two are associated with its scalar part and the six-vector with its vectorial part.

There is also an alternative way of expressing (27.17) by means of an antisymmetrical tensor. Let

$$\underline{F} = \frac{1}{2i}\,\underline{\epsilon}^{\rho\sigma} f'_{\rho\sigma}$$

where $f'_{\rho\sigma}$ is again real. By (27.3), this gives

$$\underline{F} = \tfrac{1}{2}\,\tilde{\epsilon}^{\rho\sigma} f'_{\rho\sigma} = \tfrac{1}{2}\,\underline{\epsilon}^{\rho\sigma} \tilde{f}'_{\rho\sigma}$$

Hence we find

$$f'_{\rho\sigma} = \tilde{f}_{\rho\sigma}$$

so that (27.14) may be written as

$$Q = u + i\tilde{v} + \tfrac{1}{2}\,\underline{\epsilon}^{\rho\sigma} f_{\rho\sigma} = u + i\tilde{v} + \frac{1}{2i}\,\underline{\epsilon}^{\rho\sigma} \tilde{f}_{\rho\sigma}$$

We note that $f_{\rho\sigma}$ and $\tilde{f}_{\rho\sigma}$ may be regarded as different representations of the same six-vector $\underline{F}$.

CHAPTER VII.

Invariant and Covariant Formulation of Field Equations

§28. Invariant and covariant forms of the equations of Maxwell and Lanczos.

Let again x^α denote the generalized coordinates in the affine space-time of distant parallelism or the coordinates in curvilinear coordinate system in flat space-time. We introduce the invariant differential operator

$$D = \bar{E}^\alpha \partial / \partial x^\alpha = \bar{E}^\alpha \partial_\alpha . \tag{28.1}$$

In the cartesian coordinate system defined by (24.1) we have

$$D = \bar{I}^\alpha \partial / \partial \xi^\alpha = \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi^0} + ie_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi^1} + ie_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi^2} + ie_3 \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi^3} . \tag{28.2}$$

It is well known (cf. Conway 1911, Klein 1927) that Maxwell's equations in flat space and in cartesian coordinates can be written as

$$(DA) = \underline{F}^\times \tag{28.3}$$

$$D\underline{F} = J^\times \tag{28.4}$$

where D is given by (28.2). $\underline{F}$ corresponds to the electromagnetic field, A to the potential vector and J to the current density 4-vector. Now we can regard these quaternion equations as invariant. In the case of generalized coordinat x^α, the invariant operator D takes the form (28.1). The components of A, J and $\underline{F}$ are determined by

$$A = \bar{E}^\beta A_\beta \tag{28.5}$$

$$J = \bar{E}_\beta J^\beta \tag{28.6}$$

$$F = \tfrac{1}{2}\underline{E}^{\alpha\beta} f_{\alpha\beta} = \tfrac{1}{2}\bar{E}^\alpha \bar{E}^\beta f_{\alpha\beta} \tag{28.7}$$

where $f_{\alpha\beta}$ are the antisymmetrical tensor components of the invariant vectorial quaternion $\underline{F}$. Inserting these expressions in (28.3) and using (26.22) we obtain

$$\bar{E}^\alpha E^\beta w_\alpha A_\beta = \tfrac{1}{2}\bar{E}^\alpha \bar{E}^\beta f_{\alpha\beta} \tag{28.8}$$

Taking the scalar parts of both sides we find, by (25.3)

$$g^{\alpha\beta} w_\alpha A_\beta = w_\alpha A^\alpha = 0 \tag{28.9}$$

which is the Lorentz condition. Taking the vectorial parts of both sides in (28.8) we find

$$V(\bar{E}^\alpha E^\beta w_\alpha A_\beta) = \tfrac{1}{2}(\underline{E}^{\alpha\beta})^\times (w_\alpha A_\beta - w_\beta A_\alpha) = \tfrac{1}{2}(\underline{E}^{\alpha\beta})^\times f_{\alpha\beta}$$

Hence, since $f_{\alpha\beta}$ is real

$$w_\alpha A_\beta - w_\beta A_\alpha = f_{\alpha\beta} \tag{28.10}$$

which is a covariant relation between the covariant components of the potential vector and those of the electromagnetic field. (28.10) and (28.9) are equivalent to (28.3) and they depend on the torsion tensor. For instance (28.9) can be written,

from (26.2) and (25.19)

$$\Delta_\alpha A^\alpha = k^{-1}\partial_\alpha k A^\alpha = -2\Lambda_\alpha A^\alpha$$

where Δ_α denotes metric differentiation. (28.10) gives

$$\partial_\alpha A_\beta - \partial_\beta A_\alpha - 2\Lambda_{\alpha\beta}^{\cdot\cdot\gamma} A_\gamma = f_{\alpha\beta} \qquad (28.11)$$

Again, for integrable coordinate systems the torsion tensor vanishes and (28.11) reduces to the familiar relation between field and potential.

Now substitution of (28.6) and (28.7) in (28.4) gives

$$\tfrac{1}{2}\bar{E}^\alpha \bar{E}_\beta \bar{E}_\gamma w_\alpha f^{\beta\gamma} = \bar{E}_\gamma J^\gamma$$

Taking the complex conjugate of both sides and using the identity (24.28) we have

$$\tfrac{1}{2} G^\alpha{}_{\cdot\beta\gamma}^{\cdot\cdot} w_\alpha f^{\beta\gamma} + \tfrac{1}{2} E^{-\alpha\beta\gamma} w_\alpha f_{\beta\gamma} = E_\gamma J^\gamma \qquad (28.12)$$

where the hermitian quaternion $G_{\alpha\beta\gamma}$ is given by (24.21) and the antihermitian quaternion $E_{\alpha\beta\gamma}$ by (24.27). Taking the antihermitian parts of both sides of (28.12) we obtain

$$\tfrac{1}{2} E^{\alpha\beta\gamma} w_\alpha f_{\beta\gamma} = \tfrac{i}{2} k^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma} E_\varepsilon w_\alpha f_{\beta\gamma}$$
$$= \tfrac{i}{2} E_\varepsilon w_\alpha k^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma} f_{\beta\gamma}$$

Hence

$$w_\alpha \tilde{f}^{\varepsilon\alpha} = 0. \qquad (28.13)$$

Taking the hermitian part of (28.12) we find

$$\tfrac{1}{2} G^\alpha{}_{\cdot\beta\gamma}^{\cdot\cdot} w_\alpha f^{\beta\gamma} = E_\gamma J^\gamma$$

But, by (24.21)

$$\tfrac{1}{2} G^\alpha{}_{\cdot\beta\gamma}^{\cdot\cdot} w_\alpha f^{\beta\gamma} = E_\gamma w_\alpha f^{\alpha\gamma}.$$

Hence

$$w_\alpha f^{\alpha\gamma} = J^\gamma \qquad (28.14)$$

This last relation can also be written

$$k^{-1}\partial_\alpha k f^{\alpha\gamma} + 2\Lambda_\alpha f^{\alpha\gamma} + \Lambda_{\mu\nu}{}^{\gamma} f^{\mu\nu} = J^\gamma \qquad (28.15)$$

and it takes the familiar form when the torsion tensor vanishes.

In §7 we have given the quaternion form of Lanczos' equations for a particle of spin ½ in cartesian coordinates. The complex quaternion may be regarded as invariant so that in the space-time of distant parallelism or in general coordinate systems we can still write

$$D\psi = \mu\chi^* \qquad (28.15)$$

$$D\chi = -\mu\psi^* \qquad (28.16)$$

Now let us choose for ψ the tensor representation (27.13) and for χ the representation (27.14).

$$\psi = E^\beta q_\beta + \tfrac{1}{3!} E_{\lambda\mu\nu} b^{\lambda\mu\nu} = E^\beta (q_\beta + i\tilde{b}_\beta) \qquad (28.17)$$

$$\chi = u + \tfrac{i}{4!} k^{\lambda\mu\nu\epsilon} v_{\lambda\mu\nu\epsilon} + \tfrac{1}{2} \underset{=}{E}{}^{\alpha\beta} f_{\alpha\beta} = u + i\tilde{v} + \tfrac{1}{2} \underset{=}{E}{}^{\alpha\beta} f_{\alpha\beta} \qquad (28.18)$$

We have, using (28.1)

$$\mathcal{S}(D\psi) = w_\alpha a^\alpha + i w_\alpha \tilde{b}^\alpha = u - i\tilde{v} \qquad (28.19)$$

$$\mathcal{V}(D\psi) = \tfrac{1}{2}(\underset{=}{E}{}^{\alpha\beta})^x [(w_\alpha q_\beta - w_\beta a_\alpha) + i(w_\alpha \tilde{b}_\beta - w_\beta \tilde{b}_\alpha)] = \tfrac{1}{2}(\underset{=}{E}{}^{\alpha\beta})^x f_{\alpha\beta} \qquad (28.20)$$

Now from (27.11) it follows that, for any two real anti-symmetrical tensors $R_{\alpha\beta}$ and $S_{\alpha\beta}$ we have

$$R_{\alpha\beta} = \tilde{S}_{\alpha\beta} = \tfrac{1}{2} k_{\alpha\beta\rho\sigma} S^{\rho\sigma}$$

if

$$\underset{=}{E}{}^{\alpha\beta} (R_{\alpha\beta} + i S_{\alpha\beta}) = 0 . \qquad (28.21)$$

The equation (28.20) has the form (28.21) if we put

$$-S_{\alpha\beta} = w_\alpha \tilde{b}_\beta - w_\beta \tilde{b}_\alpha$$

and

$$R_{\alpha\beta} = w_\alpha a_\beta - w_\beta a_\alpha - f_{\alpha\beta}$$

Now we evaluate $\tilde{S}_{\alpha\beta}$. We have

$$\tilde{S}_{\alpha\beta} = -\tfrac{1}{2} k_{\alpha\beta\gamma\sigma}(w^\gamma \tilde{b}^\sigma - w^\sigma \tilde{b}^\gamma) = -\tfrac{1}{3!} k_{\alpha\beta\gamma\sigma} k^{\sigma\lambda\mu\nu} w^\gamma b_{\lambda\mu\nu}$$

and since

$$k_{\alpha\beta\gamma\sigma} k^{\sigma\lambda\mu\nu} = \delta^{\sigma\lambda\mu\nu}_{\sigma\alpha\beta\gamma} = \delta^{\lambda\mu\nu}_{\alpha\beta\gamma} = (\delta^{\lambda\mu}_{\alpha\beta}\delta^\nu_\gamma + \delta^{\lambda\mu}_{\beta\gamma}\delta^\nu_\alpha + \delta^{\lambda\mu}_{\gamma\alpha}\delta^\nu_\beta)$$

we obtain

$$\tilde{S}_{\alpha\beta} = -\tfrac{1}{2}\delta^{\lambda\mu}_{\alpha\beta} w^\gamma b_{\lambda\mu\gamma} = w^\gamma b_{\gamma\alpha\beta}.$$

Hence (28.20) leads to the covariant equation

$$\mu f_{\alpha\beta} = w_\alpha a_\beta - w_\beta a_\alpha - w^\gamma b_{\gamma\alpha\beta}. \qquad (28.22)$$

We now turn to the equation (28.16) which can be written in the form

$$E^\alpha w_\alpha (u - i\tilde{v}) + \tfrac{1}{2}(G^{\alpha\beta\gamma} + E^{\alpha\beta\gamma}) w_\alpha f_{\beta\gamma} = -\mu (E^\alpha a_\alpha + \tfrac{1}{3!} E^{\lambda\mu\nu} b_{\lambda\mu\nu})$$

where $G^{\alpha\beta\gamma}$ is given by (24.21) and $E^{\alpha\beta\gamma}$ by (24.27).

Taking the hermitian parts of both sides we find

$$w_\alpha u + w^\beta f_{\beta\alpha} = -\mu a_\alpha. \qquad (28.23)$$

By (24.31), the antihermitian parts of both sides give

$$w^\lambda v_{\lambda\alpha\beta\gamma} + (w_\alpha f_{\beta\gamma} + w_\beta f_{\gamma\alpha} + w_\gamma f_{\alpha\beta}) = -\mu b_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \qquad (28.24)$$

We also write (28.19) as two separate real equations:

$$w_\alpha a^\alpha = \mu u \qquad (28.25)$$

$$w_\alpha \tilde{b}^\alpha = -\mu \tilde{v}$$

This last equation can also be written as

$$w_\alpha b_{\lambda\mu\nu} - w_\lambda b_{\alpha\mu\nu} - w_\mu b_{\lambda\alpha\nu} - w_\nu b_{\lambda\mu\alpha} = -\mu v_{\alpha\lambda\mu\nu} \qquad (28.26)$$

Now (28.25), (28.24), (28.22), (28.23) and (28.24) are

the covariant equivalents of the invariant equations (28.15) and (28.16).

That Lanczos' equations describe a particle of spin ½ is seen from the fact that if we put

$$\Psi = \begin{pmatrix} \psi \\ \chi \end{pmatrix}$$

the equations (28.15) and (28.16) may be written as

$$\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu \Psi = \mu \Psi$$

where γ^μ represents the operators

$$\gamma^\mu = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\bar{\epsilon}^\mu ( )^x \\ \bar{\epsilon}^\mu ( )^x & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Here $( )^x$ stands for the operation of taking the complex conjugate of Ψ. We have

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu + \gamma^\nu\gamma^\mu) = \begin{pmatrix} -\tfrac{1}{2}(\bar{\epsilon}^\mu\epsilon^\nu + \bar{\epsilon}^\nu\epsilon^\mu) & 0 \\ 0 & -\tfrac{1}{2}(\bar{\epsilon}^\mu\epsilon^\nu + \bar{\epsilon}^\nu\epsilon^\mu) \end{pmatrix} = -g^{\mu\nu}$$

These are Tetrode's commutation relations for the operators γ^μ in a general coordinate system in the case of a particle of spin ½.

§29. Wave equations for particles of spin 1 as degenerate cases of Lanczos' equations.

Lanczos' equations involve a wave function with 16 real or 8 complex components. We propose to show in this section that all equations for a particle of spin 1, including an equation recently discovered by Bhabha (1949) may be regarded as degenerate cases of Lanczos' equations for a particle of spin ½. We distinguish the following cases:

a) ψ is hermitian and given by

$$\psi = \varepsilon^{\rho} a_{\rho}$$

χ is a real scalar. We can represent χ by the invariant u.

$$\chi = u .$$

The covariant Lanczos equations reduce to the two equations

$$w_\alpha a^\alpha = \mu u \qquad (29.1)$$

$$w_\alpha u = -\mu a_\alpha$$

b) ψ is antihermitian and χ is an imaginary scalar. We put

$$\psi = \frac{i}{3!}\varepsilon^{\rho\sigma\tau} b_{\rho\sigma\tau} \quad , \chi = \frac{i}{4!} k^{\rho\sigma\tau\varepsilon} v_{\rho\sigma\tau\varepsilon}$$

The surviving covariant equations are

$$\begin{cases} w_\rho b_{\sigma\tau\varepsilon} - w_\sigma b_{\rho\tau\varepsilon} - w_\tau b_{\sigma\rho\varepsilon} - w_\varepsilon b_{\sigma\tau\rho} = -\mu v_{\rho\sigma\tau\varepsilon} \\ w^\lambda v_{\lambda\rho\sigma\tau} = -\mu b_{\rho\sigma\tau} \end{cases} \qquad (29.2)$$

(29.1) and (29.2) were shown to be tensor forms of equations for particles of spin 1 when the ware function has five

components by Kemmer (1936).

c) ψ is hermitian and purely vectorial. We put

$$\psi = E^{\alpha} a_{\alpha} \quad , \chi = \tfrac{1}{2} E^{\alpha\beta} f_{\alpha\beta}$$

so that the field is described by a 4-vector and by an antisymmetrical tensor. Lanczos' equations take the form

$$\begin{aligned} w_{\alpha} a_{\beta} - w_{\beta} a_{\alpha} &= \mu f_{\alpha\beta} \\ w^{\beta} f_{\beta\alpha} &= -\mu a_{\alpha} \end{aligned} \tag{29.3}$$

that is we obtain Proca's equations describing a vector particle of spin 1.

d) ψ is antihermitian and χ purely vectorial. Let

$$\psi = \tfrac{1}{3!} E^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta} b_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta} \quad , \chi = \tfrac{1}{2} E^{\alpha\beta} f_{\alpha\beta}$$

The field is described by a pseudo-vector and an antisymmetrical tensor. We obtain

$$\begin{cases} w^{\varepsilon} b_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta} = -\mu f_{\alpha\beta} \\ w_{\varepsilon} f_{\alpha\beta} + w_{\alpha} f_{\beta\varepsilon} + w_{\beta} f_{\varepsilon\alpha} = -\mu b_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta} \end{cases} \tag{29.4}$$

that is the equations for a pseudo-vector particle of spin 1. Kemmer (1939) has shown that (29.3) and (29.4) are the only two equations which describe a particle of spin 1 when its wave function has 10 components. All the four sets of equations (29; 1, 2, 3, 4) can be put in the form

$$\beta^{\alpha} \partial_{\alpha} \Psi = i\mu \Psi \tag{29.5}$$

where the operators β^{α} satisfy the Duffin-Kemmer commutation relations

$$\beta^{\lambda}\beta^{\mu}\beta^{\nu} + \beta^{\nu}\beta^{\mu}\beta^{\lambda} = g^{\lambda\mu}\beta^{\nu} + g^{\nu\mu}\beta^{\lambda} \tag{29.6}$$

These relations are more general than the Dirac-Fetrodo commutation relations for particles of spin ½

$$\gamma^\mu\gamma^\nu + \gamma^\nu\gamma^\mu = -2g^{\mu\nu} \tag{29.7}$$

since the operators $i\gamma^\mu$ satisfy (29.6), but β^μ do not satisfy (29.7) in general. Now Bhabha has shown recently (1949) that there exists a commutation relation more general than (29.7) and (29.6), namely

$$(\beta^\lambda\beta^\mu\beta^\nu + \beta^\nu\beta^\mu\beta^\lambda) + (\beta^\mu\beta^\nu\beta^\lambda + \beta^\lambda\beta^\nu\beta^\mu) + (\beta^\nu\beta^\lambda\beta^\mu + \beta^\mu\beta^\lambda\beta^\nu) = 2g^{\lambda\mu}\beta^\nu + 2g^{\nu\mu}\beta^\lambda + 2g^{\lambda\nu}\beta^\mu \tag{29.8}$$

which is obviously satisfied by a solution of (29.6) or i times a solution of (29.7), but whose general solution need not satisfy either (29.6) or (29.7). He has also shown that (29.5) where β^α satisfy (29.8) may still be regarded as describing a particle of spin 1 and he has given equivalent tensor equations when Ψ in (29.5) has 14 components. Then β^α are 14 x 14 matrices. Now we shall see presently that his equations are identical with another special case of Lanczos' equations.

e) ψ is a complete complex quaternion

$$\psi = \epsilon^\alpha a_\alpha + \frac{1}{3!}E^{\alpha\beta\gamma}b_{\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

but χ is purely vectorial

$$\chi = \frac{1}{2}\underline{E}^{\alpha\beta}f_{\alpha\beta}$$

so that we must put $u = \tilde{v} = 0$ in the covariant Lanczos equations. Thus we obtain Bhabha's equations

$$\begin{cases} w_\alpha a_\beta - w_\beta a_\alpha - w^\varepsilon b_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta} = \mu f_{\alpha\beta} \\ w^\varepsilon f_{\varepsilon\alpha} = -\mu a_\alpha \\ w_\alpha f_{\beta\gamma} + w_\beta f_{\gamma\alpha} + w_\gamma f_{\alpha\beta} = -\mu b_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \end{cases} \tag{29.9}$$

which again lead to the relativistic second order wave equations for the vector a_α, the pseudo-vector $b_{\alpha\beta\delta}$, the antisymmetrical tensor $f_{\alpha\beta}$ and which describe a particle of spin 1.

f - Another incomplete form of Lanczos' equations is obtained by taking $f_{\alpha\beta}=0$. Then the wave function has 10 components but consists of (29.1) and (29.2) written together. In the form (29.5) the still satisfy (29.6).

g - ψ is hermitian and the pseudo-scalar components $\tilde{v}$ of χ is zero. In this case we have the 11-component wave equation:

$$\begin{cases} w^\alpha a_\alpha = \mu u \\ w_\alpha a_\beta - w_\beta a_\alpha = \mu f_{\alpha\beta} \\ w_\alpha u + w^\beta f_{\beta\alpha} = -\mu a_\alpha \end{cases} \tag{29.10}$$

h - ψ is antihermitian and the scalar invariant component u of χ is zero. We get another 11-component equation

$$w_\alpha b_{\beta\gamma\varepsilon} = -w_\beta b_{\alpha\gamma\varepsilon} - w_\gamma b_{\beta\alpha,\varepsilon} - w_\varepsilon b_{\beta\gamma\alpha} = -\mu v_{\alpha\beta\gamma\varepsilon} \tag{29.11}$$

$$w^\varepsilon b_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta} = -\mu f_{\alpha\beta}$$

$$w^\varepsilon v_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma} + (w_\alpha f_{\beta\gamma} + w_\beta f_{\gamma\alpha} + w_\gamma f_{\alpha\beta}) = -\mu b_{\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

i - ψ is complete, but u is missing from χ. We get a 15-component equation.

$$\begin{cases} w_\alpha b_{\beta\gamma\varepsilon} - w_\beta b_{\alpha\gamma\varepsilon} - w_\gamma b_{\beta\alpha\varepsilon} - w_\varepsilon b_{\beta\gamma\alpha} = -\mu v_{\alpha\beta\gamma\varepsilon} \\ w_\alpha a_\beta - w_\beta a_\alpha - w^\varepsilon b_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta} = \mu f_{\alpha\beta} \\ w^\varepsilon f_{\varepsilon\alpha} = -\mu a_\alpha \\ w^\varepsilon v_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma} + (w_\alpha f_{\beta\gamma} + w_\beta f_{\gamma\alpha} + w_\gamma f_{\alpha\beta}) = -\mu b_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \end{cases} \tag{29.12}$$

j - We have another 15-component equation when $\tilde{v}$ is missing

$$\begin{cases} w^\alpha a_\alpha = \mu u \\ w_\alpha a_\beta - w_\beta a_\alpha - w^\varepsilon b_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta} = \mu f_{\alpha\beta} \\ w_\alpha u + w^\beta f_{\beta\alpha} = -\mu a_\alpha \\ w_\alpha f_{\beta\gamma} + w_\beta f_{\gamma\alpha} + w_\gamma f_{\alpha\beta} = -\mu f_{\alpha\beta\gamma} \end{cases} \tag{29.13}$$

It can be seen that if (29; 10, 11, 12, 13) are put in the form (29.5) do not satisfy any of the relations (29; 7,6 or 8).

§30. New tensor forms of Dirac's equation.

Lanczos' equations, though describing a particle of spin ½ are not equivalent to Dirac's equation as they involve a wave function with 8 complex components. We now want to give tensor equations equivalent to Dirac's equation. We have seen that this can be done if it can be put in an invariant quaternion form. Now Watson's form of Dirac's equation for the free electron is, in cartesian coordinates ξ^α

$$(\bar{I}^\alpha \partial/\partial\xi^\alpha)\Psi = \mu\Psi\hat{e}_3 \qquad (\bar{I}^0 = 1,\ \bar{I}^n = ie_n)$$

We have also seen that if Dirac's equation is wanted to retain its cartesian form with the same constant operators $\bar{I}^\alpha$ under a coordinate transformation $\xi^\alpha \to x^\alpha$, then Ψ cannot be regarded as an invariant quaternion but obeys the spinor transformation law (cf. §5). On the other hand we have seen that in their covariant formulation other field equations do not retain their form in cartesian coordinates. Hence if we want to find a covariant formulation for Dirac's equation we must assume that under $\xi^\alpha \to x^\alpha$, the Dirac operators are also transformed into variable matrices which obey the Tetrode commutation relations (29.7) in a general coordinate system. In this case the differential operator $\gamma^\alpha \partial_\alpha$ in Dirac's equation

$$\gamma^\alpha \partial_\alpha \psi = \mu\psi \qquad (30.1)$$

is an invariant, hence ψ is also an invariant. Now this point of view in discussing the transformation properties of (30.1) is generally adopted for writing it in a general coordinate system, but it is the other point of view that is supposed to have physical significance. In order to write (30.1) in quaternion form we take the following representation of the operators γ^α when the basis vectors E^α which correspond to the generalised coordinates x^α are known:

$$\gamma^r = E^r(\ )^* e_3$$

so that, if Ψ is a complex quaternion

$$\gamma^r \Psi = E^r \Psi^* e_3 .$$

These operators satisfy (29.7) and Dirac's equation becomes

$$D\Psi = -\rho \Psi^* e_3 \qquad (30.2)$$

where D is given by (28.1) and is invariant. Ψ is also an invariant quaternion. To obtain a covariant representation we must write Ψ and e_3 in terms of their covariant components. For the invariant quaternion Ψ we can always choose a representation of the form (27.13)

$$\Psi = E_\alpha c^\alpha + \frac{1}{3!} \epsilon^{\alpha\beta\gamma} b_{\alpha\beta\gamma} = E_\beta (c^\beta - i\tilde{b}^\beta) \qquad (30.3)$$

Now we write

$$-e_3 = i I^\alpha{}_\alpha l = i E^\alpha l_\alpha \qquad (30.4)$$

so that the cartesian coordinates of e_3 are αl and its general coordinates l_α. We have

$$_0 l = {}_1 l = {}_2 l = 0 \quad , \quad {}_3 l = -1 .$$

in cartesian coordinates. But $l_\alpha \neq 0$ in general. Since e_3 is constant and has unit norm, l_α must satisfy the conditions

$$l_\nu l^\nu = -1 \quad , \quad w_\alpha l_\nu = 0 \tag{30.5}$$

where w_α denotes the affine covariant differentiation. Thus (30.2) may be written as

$$\bar{E}^\alpha E^\beta w_\alpha c_\beta + \tfrac{1}{3!}\, \bar{E}^\varepsilon E^{\alpha\beta\gamma} w_\varepsilon b_{\alpha\beta\gamma}$$
$$= \mu\, \bar{E}^\alpha E^\beta i a_\alpha l_\beta + \tfrac{1}{3!} (E^{\alpha\beta\gamma})\tilde{} E^\varepsilon i b_{\alpha\beta\gamma} l_\varepsilon . \tag{30.6}$$

Proceeding in exactly the same way as for the first Lanczos equation (28.15) we find

$$w_\alpha c^\alpha + i \tfrac{1}{4!} k^{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma} (w_\varepsilon b_{\alpha\beta\gamma} - w_\alpha b_{\varepsilon\beta\gamma} - w_\beta b_{\alpha\varepsilon\gamma} - w_\gamma b_{\alpha\beta\varepsilon})$$
$$+ \tfrac{1}{2} \underline{E}^{\alpha\beta} [(w_\alpha c_\beta - w_\beta c_\alpha) + i (w_\alpha \tilde{b}_\beta - w_\beta \tilde{b}_\alpha)]$$
$$= b_\alpha l^\alpha + i c_\alpha l^\alpha + \tfrac{1}{2} \underline{E}^{\alpha\beta} [(l_\beta \tilde{b}_\alpha - l_\alpha \tilde{b}_\beta) - i (l_\beta c_\alpha - l_\alpha c_\beta)] \tag{30.7}$$

From this invariant equation, using the dual notations of §27, we have

$$w^\alpha c_\alpha = \mu\, l^\alpha \tilde{b}_\alpha \tag{30.8}$$
$$w^\alpha \tilde{b}_\alpha = \mu\, l^\alpha c_\alpha$$
$$w_\alpha c_\beta - w_\beta c_\alpha + k_{\alpha\beta\sigma\varepsilon} w^\sigma \tilde{b}^\varepsilon = \mu (l_\beta \tilde{b}_\alpha - l_\alpha \tilde{b}_\beta + k_{\beta\alpha\sigma\varepsilon} l^\sigma c^\varepsilon)$$
$$w_\alpha \tilde{b}_\beta - w_\beta \tilde{b}_\alpha - k_{\alpha\beta\sigma\varepsilon} w^\sigma c^\varepsilon = \mu (l_\beta c_\alpha - l_\alpha c_\beta - k_{\beta\alpha\sigma\varepsilon} l^\sigma \tilde{b}^\varepsilon)$$

These covariant relations exhibit a curious symmetry between dual quantities. From §1 and §5 it follows that if ${}_\alpha C$, ${}_\alpha \tilde{b}$ are the cartesian components of the vector and pseudo vector whose components in the general coordinate system are c_α and $\tilde{b}_\alpha$, then the four invariant elements of

the column matrix Ψ in Dirac's representation (30.1) are given by (cf. 1.21)

$$\psi_1 = {}_0c - i\,{}_3\tilde{b} \quad , \quad \psi_3 = i\,{}_0\tilde{b} + {}_3c$$
$$\psi_2 = {}_2\tilde{b} - i\,{}_1\tilde{b} \quad , \quad \psi_4 = i\,{}_2c + {}_1c$$

In this case we obtain the ordinary vector equations in §14.

It may be noticed that we could obtain another tensor form of Diracs equation by keeping (30.4) but adopting the form (27.14) for Ψ. Then the electron would be described by an antisymmetrical tensor, a scalar invariant and a scalar pseudo-invariant, all these quantities being real.

When an electromagnetic field is present the additional term on the right hand side of (30.2) is the invariant quaternion

$$\Omega = \bar{A}\Psi e_3 \qquad (30.9)$$

Let

$$A = E^\alpha A_\alpha$$

The additional term on the right of (30.8) is

$$\Omega = \bar{E}^\alpha E^\beta E^\gamma\, i\, l_\gamma A_\alpha (c_\beta - i\tilde{b}_\beta)$$

which can always be put in the form

$$\Omega = \omega_1 + i\omega_2 + \tfrac{1}{2} E^{\alpha\beta}\omega_{\alpha\beta}$$

where $\omega_{\alpha\beta}$ is an antisymmetrical tensor, ω_1 scalar and ω_2 pseudo scalar. The calculation of these quantities which will appear in the equations (30.8) in terms of $A_\alpha, c_\beta, \tilde{b}_\beta, l_\gamma$ is rather tedious and the resulting covariant equations too

complicated. This is why the tensor form of Dirac's equation need not be used for solving it. We have seen in chapters IV and V how the invariant quaternion form can be solved directly.

CHAPTER VIII

Dirac's Equation and General Relativity

§31. Spaces characterized by the vanishing of two 4-vectors derived from the torsion tensor.

All the attempts to set up unitary field theories show at least that some field equations for particles of spin 1 (like Maxwell's and Proca's equations) may be given some geometrical interpretation if a suitable space-time model is chosen. However, in all the investigations connected with general relativity no equations to describe the structure of a space-time model have been encountered which are, even in the first approximation, similar to wave equations for particles of spin ½. A satisfactory unitary theory must, on the other hand, take account of the matter field described by Dirac's equation. In this section we propose to show that the simplest of such equations for particles of spin ½, namely the Frenkel--Madelung equation (that is Dirac's equation when the rest mass is zero) may be given a very simple geometrical interpretation.

We consider the affine space-time of distant parallelism described by the basis vectors E_α. If the space is euclidian, that is if a coordinate transformations can be found such that it transforms E_α into the constant cartesian basis vectors I_α, then the torsion tensor vanishes and we have the 24 equations

$$\Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\delta} = 0 \qquad (31.1)$$

In general the torsion tensor does not vanish. Now we have seen that in such a space we can derive from the torsion tensor two important 4-vectors, namely Λ_α given by (25.17) and L_ε given by (25.20). They vanish if (31.1) holds but they may also vanish without (31.1) beingtrue. In this case they define a special type of affine space just as Einstein's gravitational equations define a special type of Riemannian space. Thus we assume the 8 equations

$$\Lambda_\varepsilon = 0 \qquad (31.2)$$

$$L_\varepsilon = 0 \qquad (31.3)$$

We now want to prove that from (31.2) and (31.3) we can derive an equivalent quaternion equation which is identical with Dirac's equation with rest mass zero. Consider the invariant quaternion constructed by means of Ricci's rotation tensor

$$B = E^\alpha \bar{E}^\beta E^\gamma B_{\alpha,\beta\gamma} \qquad (31.4)$$

where $B_{\alpha,\beta\gamma}$ is given by (25.15). Using (24.28) we find

$$B = (G^{\alpha\beta\gamma} + E^{\alpha\beta\gamma}) B_{\alpha,\beta\gamma} = E^{\varepsilon}(-2g^{\alpha\gamma} B_{\alpha,\varepsilon\gamma} + i k_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma} B^{\alpha,\beta\sigma})$$

or, by (25.18) and (25.21)

$$B = E^{\varepsilon}(-2B_{\varepsilon} + i R_{\varepsilon}).$$

It now remains to express the vectors B_{ε} and R_{ε} in terms of the torsion tensor with the help of (25.19) and (25.22). Thus we find

$$B = 4E^{\varepsilon}(\Lambda_{\varepsilon} + i L_{\varepsilon}) \tag{31.5}$$

We see that (31.2) and (31.3) are equivalent to the quaternion equation

$$B = 0 \tag{31.6}$$

where B is given by (31.4). Another expression for B derived from (26.7) by multiplying both sides to the left is

$$B = E^{\alpha} \bar{E}^{\beta} \Delta_{\alpha} E_{\beta} . \tag{31.7}$$

(31.4), (31.7) and (31.5) are equivalent.

At this point let us introduce another set of basis vectors E'_{α} which lead to the same metric tensor $g_{\alpha\beta}$ as E_{α}. Hence

$$E'_{\alpha} . \bar{E}'_{\beta} = E_{\alpha} . \bar{E}_{\beta} = g_{\alpha\beta} . \tag{31.8}$$

It follows that at each point E'_{α} are related to E_{α} by an orthogonal transformation. Thus we can write

$$E_{\alpha} = \xi^{\dagger} E'_{\alpha} \xi \tag{31.9}$$

where ξ is an invariant quaternion such that

$$\xi \bar{\xi} = 1 . \tag{31.10}$$

On account of (31.8) the metric covariant differentiation Δ_α is the same, whether associated with the frame E_α or the frame E'_α. The Ricci rotation tensor which corresponds to E'_α will be denoted by $B'_{\alpha,\beta\gamma}$ and the torsion tensor by $\Lambda'_{\alpha\beta,\gamma}$. They are defined in the same way as for E_α and satisfy the relations

$$\Delta_\alpha E'_\beta = B'_{\alpha,\beta\gamma} E'^\gamma \tag{31.11}$$

$$B' = E'^\alpha \bar{E}'^\beta \Delta_\alpha E'_\beta = E^{-1\alpha} \bar{E}'^\beta E'^\gamma B'_{\alpha,\beta\gamma} = 4E'^\varepsilon (\Lambda'_{\varepsilon+i}L'_\varepsilon) \tag{31.12}$$

where

$$\Lambda'_\varepsilon = \Lambda'^{\cdots\alpha}_{\varepsilon\alpha\cdot} \tag{31.13}$$

$$L'_\varepsilon = \tfrac{1}{4} k_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma} \Lambda'^{\alpha\beta,\gamma} \tag{31.14}$$

which are similar to (25.20) and (25.17). The tensor $k_{\varepsilon\alpha\beta\gamma}$ is unchanged because it depends only on $g_{\alpha\beta}$. The dashed torsion tensor is defined by

$$\partial_\alpha E'_\beta - \partial_\beta E'_\alpha = \Lambda'^{\cdots\gamma}_{\alpha\beta\cdot} E'_\gamma \tag{31.15}$$

We can evaluate B in terms of the new basis vectors as follows:

$$\Delta_\alpha E_\beta = (\Delta_\alpha \xi^\dagger) E'_\beta \xi + \xi^\dagger E'_\beta (A_\alpha \xi) + \xi^\dagger (A_\alpha E'_\beta) \xi \tag{31.16}$$

As ξ is invariant we have

$$A_\alpha \xi = \partial_\alpha \xi .$$

A consequence of (31.10) is that

$$\underline{\omega}_\alpha = (\partial_\alpha \xi)\, \bar{\xi} \tag{31.17}$$

is purely vectorial. With this definition (31.16) takes the form

$$A_\alpha E_\beta = \xi^\dagger(\underline{\omega}_\alpha^\dagger E'_\beta + E'_\beta \underline{\omega}_\alpha + A_\alpha E'_\beta)\xi \qquad (31.18)$$

which, after multiplication to the left by $E^\alpha \bar{E}^\beta$ gives, with the help of (31.7), (31.9) and (31.12)

$$B = \xi^\dagger(E'^\alpha \bar{E}'^\beta \underline{\omega}^\dagger_\alpha E'_\beta + E'^\alpha \bar{E}'^\beta E'_\beta \underline{\omega}_\alpha + B')\xi .$$

Now using the identity (24.33) (which is also true for the dashed basic vectors) we see that the first term in the bracketted expression vanishes identically. We also have

$$\bar{E}'^\beta E'_\beta = 4 .$$

Hence we derive the important transformation formula between the invariant quaternions B and B':

$$B = \xi^\dagger(4\bar{E}'^\alpha \underline{\omega}_\alpha + B')\xi . \qquad (31.19)$$

Now we have seen that the equations (31.2) and (31.3) are equivalent to (31.6) which now takes the form

$$E'^\alpha \partial_\alpha \xi + \tfrac{1}{4} B' \xi = 0 \qquad (31.20)$$

On the other hand, since $B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma}$ is antisymmetrical in β and σ we can write

$$B' = E'^\alpha \bar{E}'^\beta E'^\sigma B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma} = E'^\alpha (\underline{E}'^{\beta\sigma})^\times B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma}$$

so that (31.20) is equivalent to

$$\bar{E}'^\alpha \left(\partial_\alpha + \tfrac{1}{4} B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma} \underline{E}'^{\beta\sigma}\right) \xi^\times = 0 . \qquad (31.21)$$

Now Dirac's equation for zero rest mass can be derived from the generalized equations given by Bargmann (1952) and Symonds (1950) if we assume that the rest mass vanishes. It reads

$$\gamma^\alpha (\partial_\alpha - \tfrac{1}{4} B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma} I^{\beta\sigma}) \psi = 0 \qquad (31.22)$$

where

$$I^{\beta\sigma} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\gamma^\beta\gamma^\sigma - \gamma^\sigma\gamma^\beta)$$

and γ^α obey (29.7). The quaternion operators

$$\gamma^\alpha = E'^\alpha(\ )^x e_3$$

provide a representation of γ^α and we find

$$I^{\beta\sigma} = -\tfrac{1}{2}(E'^\beta\bar{E}'^\sigma - E'^\sigma\bar{E}'^\beta) = -\underline{E}'^{\beta\sigma}.$$

Hence the quaternion form of (31.22) is (31.21).

In the case of a conformal space we have

$$E_\alpha = f\,\xi^\dagger I_\alpha \xi \qquad (31.24)$$
$$E^\alpha = f^{-1}\xi^\dagger I^\alpha \xi$$

where f is scalar and I_α given by (4.1). Hence in this case we can take

$$E'_\alpha = f\,I_\alpha \qquad (31.25)$$

From (31.15) we find

$$\Lambda'^{\ldots r}_{\alpha\beta\ldots} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\tau_\alpha\delta^r_\beta - \tau_\beta\delta^r_\alpha) \qquad (31.26)$$

where $\tau_\alpha = \partial_\alpha \log f.$ (31.27)

We also find

$$B' = E'^r\bar{E}'_r E'^\lambda\tau_\lambda - E'^r\bar{E}'^\lambda E'_r\tau_\lambda$$

and by (24.32)

$$B' = 6E''^\lambda\tau_\lambda. \qquad (31.28)$$

Thus (31.20) becomes

$$I^\nu\partial_\nu\Phi = 0 \qquad (31.29)$$

where

$$\Phi = f^{3/2}\xi. \qquad (31.30)$$

§32. Possible relations between the rest mass, the electromagnetic potential and the torsion tensor.

We now consider a conformal space-time of affine parallelism where the basis vectors are given by (31.24). The fundamental relation (31.19) can be written in the form

$$4E'^{\alpha}\partial_{\alpha}\xi + B'\xi = \xi^{\kappa}B \,. \tag{32.1}$$

In conformal space, replacing B' by (31.28) and making the substitution (31.30) we find

$$4I^{\alpha}\partial_{\alpha}\Phi = f\Phi^{\kappa}B \,. \tag{32.2}$$

Now let us consider a conformal space-time such that the contracted torsion tensor still vanishes, that is (31.2) holds, but that (31.3) is no longer true. Then from (31.5) it follows that B is antihermitian. Let $l_{\varepsilon} = {}_{\varepsilon}L$ be the cartesian coordinates of the vector L_{ε}. We have

$$B = 4iE^{\varepsilon}L_{\varepsilon} = 4iI^{\varepsilon}{}_{\varepsilon}L = 4iI^{\varepsilon}l_{\varepsilon} \,.$$

If the vector $I^{\varepsilon}l_{\varepsilon}$ is space-like and is constant we have seen in §14 that (32.2) is identical with Dirac's equation. Choosing a cartesian frame of reference such that

$$l_1 = l_2 = l_0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad l_3 = \mu$$

we find

$$I^{\alpha}\partial_{\alpha}\Phi = \mu f\Phi^{\kappa}e_3 \,. \tag{32.3}$$

The only difference is that the rest mass term has the coefficient f, that is, (32.3) represents Dirac's equation

with a scalar invariant potential $\mu(f-1)$. The metric of the space is

$$g_{\alpha\beta} = f^2 \gamma_{\alpha\beta}$$

where $\gamma_{\alpha\beta}$ is the constant metric of special relativity. It has been shown by Infeld & Schild (1946) that Dirac's equation must be taken as (32.3) if we are to ensure conformal invariance. This point will be discussed in § 35.

To sum up, the transformation equation (32.1) is equivalent to Dirac's equation for a free particle if B satisfies the following conditions.

$$B = -B^{\dagger}$$
$$\partial_\epsilon B = 0$$
$$B\bar{B} = \mu^2 = m_0^2 c^2/\hbar^2$$

where m_0 is the rest mass.

Now let

$$E^\alpha \Lambda_\alpha = \Lambda \qquad (32.4)$$
$$E^\alpha L_\alpha = L. \qquad (32.5)$$

Both Λ and L are invariant hermitian quaternions. Using (31.5) we can write

$$B = 4(\Lambda + iL)$$

and the equation (32.2) becomes

$$\Gamma^\alpha \partial_\alpha \Phi = f \hat{\Phi}(\Lambda + iL) \qquad (32.6)$$

which we compare with Dirac's equation

$$I^{\alpha}\partial_{\alpha}\Phi = (\mu\Phi^{*} + \lambda A\Phi)e_3 \quad , (\lambda = e/\hbar c), \tag{32.7}$$

satisfied by the complex conjugate of Ψ in §5. We see that (32.6) can be written in the form (32.7) if between the geometrical quantities Λ, L and the physical quantities μ, A we have the relation

$$f\Phi^{*}(\Lambda + iL) = (\mu\Phi^{*} + \lambda A\Phi)e_3 \tag{32.8}$$

where Φ, the wave function, is given by (31.30) and connected with the basis vectors by (31.24). Multiplying (32.8) to the left by $\xi^{\dagger}$ and using (31.30) we find

$$f(\Lambda + iL) = (\mu + \lambda\xi^{\dagger}A\xi)e_3 . \tag{32.9}$$

Hence B obeys the condition that Be_3 is hermitian. That is

$$Be_3 + e_3B^{\dagger} = 0 \tag{32.10}$$

From (32.9) we derive

$$f\Lambda = \tfrac{1}{2}\lambda(\xi^{\dagger}A\xi e_3 - e_3\xi^{\dagger}A\xi) \tag{32.11}$$

and

$$fL = \mu e_3 + \tfrac{1}{2}\lambda(\xi^{\dagger}A\xi e_3 + e_3\xi^{\dagger}A\xi) . \tag{32.12}$$

In Einstein's unitary field theory in the space-time of distant parallelism (1928) Λ_{ϵ} were regarded as the components of the electromagnetic potential. That is, he took

$$\Lambda = A .$$

This, however, would lead to a wrong interaction term in Dirac's equation. If a unitary theory is possible on these lines it seems that A should be related to both vectors Λ and L through a relation of the form (32.9).

§33. Other quaternion solutions of the divergence equations. Lanczos' equation.

In the last section it has been found that in conformal space where the basis vectors have the form

$$k E^\nu = \Psi^\dagger I^\nu \Psi \tag{33.1}$$

if the contracted torsion tensor vanishes we have

$$\Delta_\nu E^\nu = \partial_\nu k E^\nu = 0 \tag{33.2}$$

The resulting equation for is

$$\Psi^\dagger D \Psi + \Psi^\dagger \Box \Psi = 0 \tag{33.3}$$

where $D = I^\nu \partial_\nu$. We have seen that in Dirac's equation for free space

$$D\Psi = \mu \Psi^* e_3$$

satisfies (33.3). It will now be shown that a similar connection between the basis vectors and the quaternions in Lanczos' equation can also be formulated. Let the basis quaternions have the form

$$k E^\nu = \lambda_1 (\bar{\Phi}^\dagger I^\nu \Phi)^* + \lambda_2 (\Psi^\dagger I^\nu \Psi) \qquad (\lambda_1, \lambda_2 = \text{constant scalars})$$

Hence we are not dealing with a conformal space. Let the contracted torsion tensor vanish so that the divergence equation (33.2) still holds. Instead of (33.3) we obtain

$$\lambda_1 \bar{\Phi} \bar{D} \bar{\Phi}^* + \lambda_1 \bar{\Phi} \bar{\Box} \bar{\Phi}^* + \lambda_2 \Psi^\dagger D \Psi + \lambda_2 \Psi^\dagger \Box \Psi = 0 \tag{33.4}$$

This quaternion equation is satisfied if we take

$$D\Psi = \lambda_1 \Phi^* \tag{33.5}$$

$$D\Phi = -\lambda_2 \Psi^*. \tag{33.6}$$

These equations become identical with Lanczos' equations if $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2$. As we have seen in §29 all the equations for spin 1 are degenerate cases of the equations (33; 5, 6). For instance if $\Psi = A$ is hermitian and $\Phi = \underline{F}$ is purely vectorial we have Proca's equation when $\lambda_1 = 1$, $\lambda_2 = \mu^2$ and Maxwell's equation when $\lambda_1 = 1$, $\lambda_2 = 0$. Thus, in all these cases (33 4) is valid. The quaternion equation (33 4) is equivalent to the 4 equations

$$D.(\lambda_2 \Psi \Psi^\dagger + \lambda_1 \Phi \Phi^\dagger) = 0$$

$$D.(\lambda_2 \Psi i e_n \Psi^\dagger - \lambda_1 \Phi i e_n \Phi^\dagger) = 0 \qquad (n = 1, 2, 3)$$

These are the generalisations of the equations (10; 1, 2) in Dirac's case. Thus for Lanczos' equations ($\lambda_1 = \lambda_2$) the vector

$$J = \Psi \Psi^\dagger + \Phi \Phi^\dagger$$

with vanishing divergence and with positive definite scalar part represents the current density. But in the case of particles with spin 1 the divergence equations (33 4) represent the vanishing of the divergence of the energy-momentum tensor. Thus in Maxwell's case ($\lambda_1 = 1$, $\lambda_2 = 0$) they read

$$\underline{F}^\dagger D \underline{F} + \underline{f}^\dagger \Box \underline{f} = 0$$

or $$\partial_\mu \underline{F} I^\mu \underline{F}^\dagger = 0$$

Multiplying scalarly by $\bar{I}^\nu$ we have

$$\partial_\mu T^{\mu\nu} = 0$$

where

$$T^{\mu\nu} = \bar{I}^\nu . (\underline{F} I^\mu \underline{F}^\dagger) = (I^\mu \underline{F}^\dagger) . (\bar{I}^\nu \underline{F}) \qquad (33.7)$$

Now we shall prove that(33.7) is the quaternion expression for Maxwell's energy momentum tensor. Let

$$\underline{F} = \frac{1}{2} I^\sigma \bar{I}^\tau f_{\sigma\tau}$$

we have

$$\underline{F}^\dagger = \frac{1}{2} \bar{I}_\alpha \bar{I}_\beta f^{\alpha\beta}$$

Hence we can write

$$T^\mu{}_\nu = \frac{1}{4} I^\mu \bar{I}_\alpha I_\beta \cdot \bar{I}_\nu I^\sigma \bar{I}^\tau f^{\alpha\beta} f_{\sigma\tau} .$$

This tensor equation is obviously valid if we replace I^μ by other basis vectors E^μ and $f^{\alpha\beta}$ by the components of the quaternion $\underline{F}$ with respect to the new basis vectors.

By (24.28) we have

$$I^\mu \bar{I}_\alpha I_\beta \cdot \bar{I}_\nu I^\sigma \bar{I}^\tau f^{\alpha\beta} f_{\sigma\tau} = (2\delta^\mu_\alpha I_\beta + i g^{\mu\lambda} k_{\lambda\alpha\beta\varepsilon} I^\varepsilon) \times (2\delta^\sigma_\nu \bar{I}^\tau + i g_{\nu\pi} k^{\pi\sigma\tau\varepsilon} \bar{I}_\varepsilon) f^{\alpha\beta} f_{\sigma\tau} ,$$

since $f^{\alpha\beta}$ is antisymmetrical. Hence

$$T^\mu{}_\nu = f^{\mu\sigma} f_{\nu\sigma} - \frac{1}{4} g_{\nu\pi} g^{\mu\lambda} \delta^{\pi\sigma\tau}_{\lambda\alpha\beta} f^{\alpha\beta} f_{\sigma\tau}$$

since

$$k^{\pi\sigma\tau\varepsilon} k_{\lambda\alpha\beta\varepsilon} = \delta^{\pi\sigma\tau}_{\lambda\alpha\beta}$$

by (24.7). But

$$\delta^{\pi\sigma\tau}_{\lambda\alpha\beta} = \delta^\pi_\lambda \delta^{\sigma\tau}_{\alpha\beta} + \delta^\pi_\alpha \delta^{\sigma\tau}_{\beta\lambda} + \delta^\pi_\beta \delta^{\sigma\tau}_{\lambda\alpha}$$

so that

$$\frac{1}{4} g_{\nu\pi} g^{\mu\lambda} \delta^{\pi\sigma\tau}_{\lambda\alpha\beta} f^{\alpha\beta} f_{\sigma\tau} = \frac{1}{2} \delta^\mu_\nu f^{\alpha\beta} f_{\alpha\beta} + \frac{1}{2} g_{\nu\pi} g^{\mu\lambda} \delta^{\sigma\tau}_{\beta\lambda} f^{\pi\beta} f_{\sigma\tau} .$$

The second term of this sum can also be written as

$$g_{\nu\pi} g^{\mu\lambda} f^{\pi\beta} f_{\beta\lambda} = f_{\nu\beta} f^{\beta\mu}$$

and we obtain finally

$$T^{\mu}{}_{\nu} = 2\left(f^{\mu\sigma} f_{\nu\sigma} - \tfrac{1}{4}\, \delta^{\mu}_{\nu} f^{\alpha\beta} f_{\alpha\beta} \right).$$

Thus (33 7) is equivalent to the energy-momentum tensor.

In the case of Proca's equations we find

$$T^{\mu\nu} = \bar{I}^{\nu} \cdot \left(\underline{f}\, I^{\mu}\, \underline{F}^{\dagger} + \mu^2\, \bar{A}\, I^{\mu}\, \bar{A} \right).$$

Six more divergence equations can be deduced from Lanczos' equations (33; 5, 6). We have

$$D \cdot (\Psi i e_m \Phi^{\dagger}) = \mathcal{S}\{ \Phi D \Psi i e_m + i e_m \Phi^{\dagger} a \Psi \}$$
$$= \mathcal{S}\{ \lambda, \Phi^{\dagger} \Phi\, i e_m - \lambda_2 i e_m \bar{\Psi} \Psi \} = 0$$

Hence the hermitian and antihermitian parts of $\Psi i e_m \Phi^{\dagger}$ satisfy the divergence equations

$$D \cdot (\Psi i e_m \Phi^{\dagger} + \Phi i e_m \Psi^{\dagger}) = 0$$
$$D \cdot (\Psi e_m \Phi^{\dagger} - \Phi e_m \Psi^{\dagger}) = 0 .$$

In both Maxwell's and Proca's cases the vectors with vanishing divergence are

$$A\, i e_m \underline{F}^{\dagger} + \underline{F}\, i e_m A$$

and $A\, e_m \underline{F}^{\dagger} - \underline{F}\, e_m A$.

In Kemmer's theory for particles of spin 1 the field variables A_α and $f_{\beta\gamma}$ are assumed to be complex quantities and a real current vector with vanishing divergence is derived from the first order equation

$$\beta^{\alpha} \partial_{\alpha} \psi = \mu \psi$$

and is given by

$$s_{\alpha} = \psi^{\dagger} \cdot (2\beta_{\alpha}^{2} - 1) \beta_{\alpha} \psi .$$

When expressed in terms of A_α and $f_{\beta\gamma}$ we find (de Broglie

p. 175)

$$s_\alpha = \frac{1}{i}\left(f_{\alpha\beta} A^\beta - f^{*}_{\alpha\beta} A^{*\beta}\right)$$

Here we have shown that a four-vectors, bilinear in A and F and with a vanishing divergence can also be obtained in the case of real fields.

---

§34. Derivation of a new form of Dirac's equation in a general coordinate system in terms of the torsion tensor.

Leaving aside possible geometrical interpretations of the quantities which occur in Dirac's equation we turn to the more practical problem of writing Dirac's equation in a general coordinate system. We have seen that if E_α are the basis vectors of the transformation, we have

$$\Delta_\varepsilon E_\alpha = 0 \tag{34.1}$$

where Δ_ε are the symbols for covariant metric differentiation and Dirac's equation in this coordinate system is

$$\bar{E}^\alpha \partial_\alpha \Psi = (\mu \Psi^* + \lambda \bar{A} \Psi) e_3 . \tag{34.2}$$

Let $g_{\alpha\beta}$ be the metric tensor associated with this transformation. If we choose other basis vectors E'_α such that (31.8) is satisfied they correspond to the same metric and are given by (31.9). Our purpose is to write (34.2) in terms of the vectors E'_α. To this end we put

$$\Psi = \xi^+ \Psi' \tag{34.3}$$
$$A = \bar{\xi} A' \xi^\wedge$$

With the definition (31.17) we find

$$\bar{E}'^\alpha (\partial_\alpha - \underline{\omega}^\wedge_\alpha) \Psi' = (\mu \Psi'^\wedge + \lambda \bar{A}' \Psi') e_3 \tag{34.4}$$

This equation may be written in Dirac's matrix form as

$$\gamma^\alpha (\partial_\alpha - \Gamma_\alpha + i\lambda A'_\alpha) \psi' = \mu \psi' \tag{34.5}$$

where the operators Γ_α correspond to the quaternion operators $\underset{\sim}{\omega}^{\kappa}_{\alpha}(\ )^{\kappa} e_3$. The form (34.5) was first given by Schrödinger and the operators Γ_α were evaluated by himself and by Bargmann (1932) in terms of Ricci's rotation tensor $B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma}$ defined by

$$\Lambda_\alpha E'_\beta = B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma} E'^{\sigma} \tag{34.6}$$

From (34.1) it follows that B vanishes for the basis vectors E_α. From (31.19) we derive immediately

$$\bar{E}'^{\alpha} \underset{\sim}{\omega}^{\kappa}_{\alpha} = -\frac{1}{4} B'^{\kappa} = -\frac{1}{4} \bar{E}'^{\alpha} \underline{E}'^{\beta\sigma} B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma} \tag{34.7}$$

Hence, another form for (34.4) is

$$E'^{\alpha}(\partial_\alpha + \frac{1}{4} \underline{E}'^{\beta\sigma} B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma})\Psi' = (\mu \Psi'^{\kappa} + \lambda \bar{A}'^{\kappa}\Psi')e_3 . \tag{34.8}$$

In §31 we have shown that in Dirac's formalism the operators $\underline{E}'^{\beta\sigma}$ are represented by the spin operators $I^{\beta\sigma}$ defined by (31.23). Hence the equation which corresponds to (34.8) in matrix formalism is

$$\gamma^\alpha(\partial_\alpha - \frac{1}{4} B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma} I^{\beta\sigma})\psi' = \mu\psi' + \lambda\gamma^\alpha A'_\alpha \psi' \tag{34.9}$$

and is seen to be identical with the equations given by Bargmann (1932) and Symonds (1950).

Now as the result of our investigations we can improve on the formula (34.9) which is not practical as the terms $B'_{\alpha,\beta\sigma} I^{\beta\sigma}$ are difficult to evaluate. Substitution of (31.12) in (34.7) gives

$$\bar{E}'^{\alpha} \underset{\sim}{\omega}^{\kappa}_{\alpha} = -\bar{E}'^{\alpha}(\Lambda'_\alpha - iL'_\alpha) \tag{34.10}$$

Hence a new form for (34.4) is

$$\bar{E}'^{\varepsilon}(\partial_\varepsilon + \Lambda'_\varepsilon - iL'_\varepsilon)\Psi' = (\mu\Psi'^{\kappa} + \lambda\bar{A}'^{\kappa}\Psi')e_3 \tag{34.11}$$

where Λ'_ε and L'_ε are given respectively by (31.13) and (31.14) in terms of the torsion tensor defined by (31.15). To translate (34.11) into the matrix formalism we need an invariant representation of the operator i which in cartesian coordinates is equal to $\alpha_1\alpha_2\alpha_3$, where $\alpha_1,\alpha_2,\alpha_3$ are Dirac's constant matrices. Now (24.31) can be written as

$$i3!E^\varepsilon = -k^{-1}\delta^{\varepsilon\beta\sigma\tau}_{0123}E_\beta\bar{E}_\sigma E_\tau\ ,\ (k=\sqrt{g}) \qquad (34.12)$$

Multiplying both sides by $\bar{E}^\varepsilon$ we have

$$i = -\frac{1}{4!}\sqrt{-g}\ \delta^{\varepsilon\beta\sigma\tau}_{0123}\bar{E}_\varepsilon E_\beta \bar{E}_\sigma E_\tau \qquad (34.13)$$

which is the invariant representation we wanted. Now since (34.12) is also valid for E'_α we can also replace the basis vectors in (34.13) by the dashed vectors.

Hence if

$$\bar{E}'^\alpha \Psi'^{\times}{}_{e_3} = \gamma^\alpha \Psi',$$

(34.13) with dashed vectors may be written as

$$i = -\frac{1}{4!}\sqrt{-g}\ \delta^{\varepsilon\beta\sigma\tau}_{0123}\gamma_\varepsilon\gamma_\beta\gamma_\sigma\gamma_\tau .$$

When γ^α are matrix representations of the same operators operating on the column matrix ψ we put

$$\gamma_5 = \frac{1}{4!}\sqrt{-g}\ \delta^{\varepsilon\beta\sigma\tau}_{0123}\gamma_\varepsilon\gamma_\beta\gamma_\sigma\gamma_\tau . \qquad (34.14)$$

Hence $\gamma_5\psi$ corresponds to $-i\Psi$.

Thus we find the matrix form of (34.11) which reads

$$\gamma^\varepsilon(\partial_\varepsilon + \Lambda'_\varepsilon + \gamma_5 L'_\varepsilon + i\lambda A'_\varepsilon)\psi = \mu\psi \qquad (34.15)$$

This isthe new formula which is valid in a general coordinate

system and which replaces (34.9). The torsion tensor $\Lambda'^{\cdot\cdot\tau}_{\rho\sigma\cdot}$ which gives rise to Λ'_ε and L'_ε is determined by

$$\partial_\rho \gamma_\sigma - \partial_\sigma \gamma_\rho = \Lambda'^{\cdot\cdot\tau}_{\rho\sigma\cdot}\, \gamma_\tau . \qquad (34.16)$$

In an orthogonal coordinate system we can write

$$E_\alpha = \xi^+ E'_\alpha \xi$$

where

$$E'_\alpha = {}^{\alpha}h_\alpha \, I_\alpha \qquad \text{(no summation)} \qquad (34.17)$$

The only contributions to the vector L_ε comes from the components of $\Lambda'_{\rho\sigma,\tau}$ when the indices ρ,σ,τ are all different because in this case $\Lambda'_{\rho\sigma,\tau}$ is zero for $\rho\neq\sigma\neq\tau$. The only non-vanishing components of $\Lambda'_{\rho\sigma,\tau}$ are

$$\Lambda'_{\beta\alpha,\alpha} = \tfrac{1}{2}\, {}^{\alpha}h_\alpha \, \partial_\beta \, {}^{\alpha}h_\alpha \qquad \text{(no summation)}.$$

Hence

$$\Lambda'_\beta = g^{\alpha\rho}\Lambda'_{\beta\alpha,\delta} = \tfrac{1}{2}\left({}_0h^0\,\partial_\beta\,{}^0h_0 + {}_1h'\,\partial_\beta\,{}^1h_1 + \ldots\right)$$
$$-\tfrac{1}{2}\left({}_0h^0\,\partial_0\,{}^0h_\beta + {}_1h'\,\partial_1\,{}^1h_\beta + \ldots\right)$$
$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\,\partial_\beta \log \frac{{}^0h_0\,{}^1h_1\,{}^2h_2\,{}^3h_3}{{}^\beta h_\beta}$$

and

$$L'_\beta = 0$$

for orthogonal coordinates. Inserting these values for Λ'_β and L'_β in (34.15) we find the formula first given by Frenkel (1934, p. 366) with a wrong sign and corrected and generalised by Symonds (1950).

In four-dimensional spherical coordinates we have

$$\partial_\varepsilon \, {}^{\varepsilon}h_\varepsilon = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad {}^0h_0 = 1 \quad \text{(no summation)}$$

so that

$$\Lambda'_\beta = \tfrac{1}{2}\,\partial_\beta \log({}^1h_1\ {}^2h_2\ {}^3h_3)$$

The coordinates are (§ 22)

$$x^0 = \tau\ ,\ x^1 = \theta\ ,\ x^2 = \varphi\ ,\ x^3 = \alpha$$

and we find

$${}^1h_1 = \tau\sinh\alpha\ ,\quad {}^2h_2 = \tau\sinh\alpha\sin\theta\ ,\quad {}^3h_3 = \tau$$

so that $\Lambda'_\beta = \tfrac{1}{2}\partial_\beta \log \tau^3 \sinh^2\alpha \sin\theta$

or

$$\Lambda'_0 = \frac{3}{2\tau}\ ,\ \Lambda'_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}\cot\theta\ ,\ \Lambda'_2 = 0\ ,\ \Lambda'_3 = \coth\alpha$$

and we get (22.12), which can be further simplified by putting

$$\eta = \tau^{3/2}\sinh\alpha\sqrt{\sin\theta}\ \Phi\ .$$

Thus if the original wave function in the quaternion equation is Ψ we put

$$\eta = \tau^{3/2}\sinh\alpha\sqrt{\sin\theta}\ e^{e_3\frac{\varphi}{2}}\ e^{e_2\frac{\theta}{2}}\ e^{-ie_3\frac{\alpha}{2}}\ \Psi$$

and the equation satisfied by η is

$$\{\partial_\tau + (\tau\sinh\alpha)^{-1} ie_1\partial_\theta + (\tau\sinh\alpha\sin\theta)^{-1} ie_2\partial_\varphi + \tau^{-1} ie_3\partial_\alpha\}\eta = (\mu\eta^* + \lambda\bar{A}'\eta)e_3\ ,$$

where

$$A' = Q^* A \bar{Q}$$

with Q defined by (21.3)

In the case of conformal coordinates we have

$$\Gamma_\beta = f\{\xi^+ I_\beta\}$$

so that

$$E'_\rho = f I_\rho \qquad \text{and} \qquad \Lambda'_\rho = f^{-3/2}\partial_\rho f^{3/2}$$

Thus the quaternion equation becomes

$$f^{-1}\bar{I}^\varepsilon f^{-3/2}\partial_\varepsilon f^{3/2}\Psi' = \mu\Psi' e_3 + f^{-1}\bar{I}^\varepsilon A_\varepsilon \Psi' e_3 .$$

We are led to put

$$\eta = f^{3/2}\Psi' = f^{3/2}\xi\Psi \tag{34.18}$$

and the equation satisfied by η is

$$\bar{I}^\varepsilon \partial_\varepsilon \eta = \mu f \eta e_3 + \bar{I}^\varepsilon A_\varepsilon \eta e_3 \tag{34.19}$$

Thus for conformal transformations Dirac's equation can be transformed to its cartesian form by means of (34.18). In §31 we have seen that for such conformal transformations we have

$$I^\varepsilon \partial_\varepsilon f^{3/2}\xi = 0 . \tag{34.20}$$

Conformal transformation

§35. Quaternion representation of conformal transformations. Conformal invariance of Dirac's equation.

Conformal transformations have been studied by Robertson, Hill, Infeld and Schild. Robertson has shown that the constant acceleration transformation of L. Page is a special conformal transformation. The general group depends on 15 parameters and is generated by

a - a constant uniform space-time expansion

b - a translation defined by a constant four-vector

c - a constant Lorentz transformation

d - an inversion defined by

$x'_0 = x_0 \tau^{-2}$, $x'_m = -x_m \tau^{-2}$ $\quad (\tau^2 = x_0^2 - x_1^2 - x_2^2 - x_3^2)$.

In §4 we have already given the quaternion equivalents of a, b and c. They are

a - $X' = \xi X$ $\quad$ (ξ = constant real scalar)

b - $X' = X + A$ $\quad$ (A = constant hermitian)

c - $X' = Q X Q^\dagger$ $\quad$ (Q = constant quaternion with unit norm)

It is easily seen that the inversion is represented by

$$X' = X^{-1}$$

Hence the general group may be written as

$$(X')^{-1} = \xi Q (X - A)^{-1} Q^\dagger + B \qquad (35.1)$$

where B is another constant hermitian quaternion. Any one of the operations a, b, c, d leaves (35.1) formally unchanged

with different values for the constants A, B, f, Q. For $f = 1$, $A = B = 0$ we obtain the Lorentz transformation.

If $f = 1$, $Q = 1$, $A = 0$, $B = i\underline{\gamma}/c^2$

we have

$$(x')^{-1} = x^{-1} + i\underline{\gamma}/2c^2 \qquad (35.2)$$

In the non relativistic limit this transformation reduces to the ordinary transformation formulae between frames of reference moving relatively with constant acceleration γ in the direction $\underline{\gamma}$. If $\underline{\gamma} = e_1\gamma$, then

$$x't_0 = x_0$$

$$x'_1 = x_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma x_0^2$$

With the help of the differentiation formula

$$dx^{-1} = -x^{-1}(dx)x^{-1}$$

(35.2) gives

$$(x')^{-1}dx'(x')^{-1} = x^{-1}(dx)x^{-1}$$

or $$dx' = (X X'^{-1})^{-1}\, dX\, (XX'^{-1})^{\dagger\,-1}$$

But from (35.2)

$$XX'^{-1} = 1 + iX\underline{\gamma}/2c^2$$

Hence

$$dX' = (1+iX\underline{\gamma}/2c^2)^{-1}\, dX (1+i\underline{\gamma}X/2c^2)^{-1}$$

Thus we can write

$$dX' = \Gamma^\dagger\, dX\, \Gamma \qquad (35.3)$$

where

$$\Gamma = (1+i\underline{\gamma}X/2c^2)^{-1}$$

This shows that the transformation is conformal.

Let

$$f = \Gamma\bar{\Gamma} \quad , \quad \xi = f^{-1}\Gamma$$

Substitution in (35.3) gives

$$dX' = f\,\xi^{\dagger}\,dX\,\xi$$

where

$$f^{-1} = (1 + i\underline{\gamma}X/2c^2)(1 - i\bar{X}\underline{\gamma}/2c^2)$$
$$= 1 + c^{-2}\underline{\gamma}.\underline{z} - X\bar{X}\gamma^2/(4c^4).$$

Hence in the first approximation

$$f = 1 - \underline{\gamma}.\underline{z}/c^2.$$

Putting in (34.19) we see that an invariant potential function $-m_0\underline{\gamma}.\underline{z}$ which is generated by the acceleration of the electron is added to Dirac's equation, in complete agreement with Page's interpretation of this special conformal transformation.

We now consider a conformal space time characterized by the function f so that the metric is

$$g_{\mu\nu} = f^2 a_{\mu\nu} \qquad (35.4)$$

where $a_{\mu\nu}$ is the metric of the special relativity, and by the quaternion $\xi\,(|\xi|=1)$ which defines a variable Lorentz transformation at each point of space-time. We assume that ξ is related to f through (34 20). The function f then determines the Riemannian curvature, that is, the gravitational

effects of space-time. We may try to determine f from the gravitationnal equations related to the metric (35.4). But as we have only one unknown function we need one equation which can be taken as the contracted Einstein equations. But the contracted Einstein equations

$$R^{\alpha}{}_{\alpha} = R = 0 \qquad (35.5)$$

simply express that the Gaussian curvature of space-time is zero. Hence we determine f by the condition (35.5).

The Riemann-Christoffel tensor for a conformal space such that

$$g_{\mu\nu} = e^{2\tau} a_{\mu\nu}$$

is given by Finzi's formula (Levi - Civita, p.231)

$$-R_{\lambda\mu\nu\varepsilon} = g_{\lambda\varepsilon}(\tau_{\mu\nu} - \tau_\mu\tau_\nu) - g_{\lambda\nu}(\tau_{\mu\varepsilon} - \tau_\mu\tau_\varepsilon) - g_{\mu\varepsilon}(\tau_{\lambda\nu} - \tau_\lambda\tau_\nu)$$
$$+ g_{\mu\nu}(\tau_{\lambda\varepsilon} - \tau_\lambda\tau_\varepsilon) + (g_{\lambda\varepsilon}g_{\mu\nu} - g_{\lambda\nu}g_{\mu\varepsilon})\tau_\sigma\tau_\sigma\, g^{\sigma\sigma},$$

where

$$\tau_\mu = \partial_\mu\tau \quad \text{and} \quad \tau_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu\partial_\nu\tau .$$

Expressing that the scalar curvature vanishes we have

$$R = g^{\mu\mu}g^{\nu\varepsilon}R_{\lambda\mu\nu\varepsilon} = 0 .$$

After obvious simplifications, this leads to the equation

$$a^{\mu\nu}(\tau_{\mu\nu} + \tau_\mu\tau_\nu) = 0$$

or

$$a^{\mu\nu}\partial_\mu\partial_\nu e^{\tau} = \Box f = 0 . \qquad (35.6)$$

Hence in the case of conformal space the metric is determined by a linear equation. If we look for a solution

of (35.6) which has a singularity on the world line $r=0$ and which tends to unity for $r\to\infty$ so we find

$$f = 1 + \frac{a}{r} .$$

Putting this in Dirac's equation (34.19) we see that it can be interpreted as an extra energy term due to a gravitational point mass at the origin. If M is the mass of the nucleus in Kepler's problem, then we must take

$$a = GM/c^2$$

where G is the gravitational constant. In §25 we have already seen that such a gravitational field leads to quasi-continuous energy levels for the electron. The dimensionless coupling constant $\gamma = MG/\hbar c$ is of the order $3n\times10^{-42}$ if there are n nucleons in the nucleus, and is entirely negligible compared with the electrostatic coupling constant $e^2/\hbar c = 1/137$.

§36. Concluding remarks

All the preceding chapters have made it clear that the quaternion treatment has put Dirac's equation on the same footing as other field equations, in particular abolishing the distinction between real and comple x fields since both types of field may be expressed by complex quaternions. Thus, Dirac's equation may be derived from a Lagrangian which takes the quaternion form

$$\mathcal{L} = \tfrac{1}{2}tc\left(\overline{\Psi}^{\dagger}.D\Psi e_3 - e_3\Psi^{\dagger}\mathfrak{A}.\Psi\right) + m_0c^2\,\mathcal{R}\left(\overline{\Psi}\overline{\Psi}^{\dagger}\right) + e\bar{A}.\Psi\Psi^{\dagger} \qquad (36.1)$$

with our usual notations. Now if Ψ is expressed by means of a 4-vector c^{α} and a pseudo-vector $\tilde{b}^{\alpha}$ as in (30.3), then $\mathcal{L}$ depends only on these real quantities and the potential A_{α}. On varying c^{α} and $\tilde{b}^{\alpha}$ separately we would again obtain 8 real equations equivalent to Dirac's equation.

Another point we want to make is this. If there is some truth in the relations between the basis vectors on the one hand, and with the physical quantities appearing in the wave equation on the other, we ought to be able to derive equations having a physical meaning from a suitable invariant Lagrangian connected with geo metrical quantities. Einstein (1928) chose, in the affine space-time of distant parallelism, the Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L} = K_3 = \Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\gamma}\Lambda^{\alpha\gamma\beta} \qquad (36.2)$$

and from this, derived approximate equations for the 16 components ${}^{a}t_{\beta}$ of the basis vectors. Weitzenböck (1929) showed that there are two more invariants which can be derived from the torsion tensor, namely

$$\kappa_2 = \Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\delta}\,\Lambda^{\alpha\beta,\delta} \qquad (36.3)$$

and

$$\kappa_1 = \Lambda_\alpha \Lambda^\alpha \qquad (36.4)$$

where Λ_α is the contracted torsion tensor. In Einstein's theory, Λ_α was interpreted as the electromagnetic potential.

We have seen that this interpretation cannot be correct since if we write Dirac's equation in such a space-time we obtain the quation (34.15) and the additional terms come from the substitution

$$\partial_\alpha \to \partial_\alpha + \Lambda_\varepsilon$$

and not from

$$\partial_\alpha \to \partial_\alpha + i\lambda A_\alpha$$

which alone gives the electromagnetic interaction. Other possible relationships between A and the torsion tensor were discussed in § 32. We have seen that, if a geometrical interpretation is possible then A must be related to both the vectors Λ_ε and L_ε. Now there is no a priori reason why the Lagrangian should involve only (36.2) and not (36.3) and (36.4). But as Weitzenböck has shown it is very difficult to make a choice. We have found on the other hand that the quaternion B given by (31.5) plays a fundamental role in

the transformation theory of Dirac's equation. It is then natural to try the Lagrangion

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{1}{16}\mathcal{R}(B\bar{B}) = \Lambda_\varepsilon \Lambda^\varepsilon - L_\varepsilon L^\varepsilon . \tag{36.5}$$

After some calculations we find

$$16\, L_\varepsilon L^\varepsilon = 2\Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\gamma}\Lambda^{\alpha\beta,\gamma} - 4\Lambda_{\alpha\beta,\gamma}\Lambda^{\alpha\gamma,\beta} .$$

Hence

$$\mathcal{L} = K_1 - \frac{1}{8}K_2 + \frac{1}{4}K_3 .$$

The direct variation of this Lagrangion would be very tedious. But the quaternion formula (31.19) gives, if we put

$$D' = E'^\varkappa \partial_\varkappa$$

$$B\bar{B} = |B|^2 = |4(D'\bar{\xi})\bar{\xi} + B'|^2 . \tag{36.7}$$

In particular, for a conformal space defined by (31.24) we find, with the definition (31.30)

$$B = 4(\Phi^{-1})^\times D'\Phi .$$

Hence the Lagrangion (36.6) takes the very simple form

$$\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{R}\,|(\Phi^{-1})^\times D'\Phi|^2 .$$

The discussion of the field equations obtained in this way is outside the scope of this work and will be the object of a future investigation.

REFERENCES

BARGMANN	Sitz. Prouss. Akad., 346 (1932)
H.J. BHABHA	Rev. Mod. Phys. 21, 451 (1949)
J. BLATON	Zeits. f. Phys. 95, 337 (1935)
M. BORN & K. FUCHS	Proc. R.S. Edinburgh 60, 1, 100 (1939 - 40)
L. BRAND	Vector and Tensor Analysis. John Wiley, (1947).
L. de BROGLIE	Une Nouvelle Theorie de la Lumiere. vol.1, Paris (1940).
P. CALDIROLA	Nuovo Cim No. 1, 5, 29 (1948)
A.W. CONWAY	Proc. R. Irish Ac. A29, 1 (1911)
	Proc. Roy. Soc. A, 162, 145 (1937)
	Acta Pont. Ac. Sci. 12, 259 (1948)
O. COSTA de BEAUREGARD	C.R. Ac. Sci. Paris, 214, 818 (1942)
C.G. DARWIN	Proc. Roy. Soc. A, 118, 654 (1928)
P.A.M. DIRAC	Proc. Roy. Soc. A, 117, 610 (1928)
E. DURAND	Journ. de Math. 25, Fasc. 4 (1946)
	id. 28, Fasc. 2 (1949).

A. EINSTEIN — Sitz. Preuss. Akad. pp. 217, 224 (1928)
id. p.p. 2, 156, (1929)
A. EINSTEIN & W. MAYER id. 522, (1932)
L.P. EISENHART Non - Riemannian Geometry (Princeton), (1927).

O.F. FISHER Phil. Mag. 30, 135 (1940)
id. 39, 878 (1948)
H.T. FLINT Phil. Mag. 39, 439 (1920)
Proc. Roy. Soc. A, 121, 676 (1928)
V. FOCK Zeits. f. Phys. 56, 330 (1929)
id. 57, 261 (1929)
V. FOCK & D. IWANENKO Zeits. f. Phys. 54, 798 (1929)
J. FRENKEL Wave Mechanics. Advanced General Theory, Oxford (1934).
K. FUCHS Proc. R.S. Edinburgh 60, 2, 147 (1939-40)

H.W. HASKEY Phil. Mag. 30, 478 (1940)
E.L. HILL Phys. Rev. 67, 358 (1945)
id. 72, 143 (1947)
id. 73, 910 (1948)
E.L. HILL & R. LANDSHOFF Rev. Mod. Phys. 10, 120 (1938)
E.W. HOBSON Spherical Harmonics

L. INFELD & A. SCHILD	Phys. Rev. 68, 250 (1945)
	id. 70, 410 (1946)
L. INFELD & VAN der WAERDEN	Sitz. Preuss. Ak. 380 (1933)
H. JEHLE	Phys. Rev. 76, 568 (1949)
N. KEMMER	Proc. Roy. Soc. A 166, 173 (1938)
	id. 773, 91 (1939)
G.W. KILMISTER	Phys. Rev. 76, 568 (1949)
	Proc. Roy. Soc. A, 199, 517 (1949)
	Thesis, London (1950).
F. KLEIN	Vorlesungen uber die Entwicklung der Math. in 19. Jahrh., (Berlin) II (1927)
W. KOPINK	Ann. der Phys. 38, 421 (1940)
B. KWALL	C.R. Ac. Sci. Paris 203, pp. 1132, 983 (1936)
C. von LANCZOS	Zeits. f. Phys. 57 pp. 447, 474, 484 (1929)
O. LAPORTE & G.E. UHLENBECK	Phys. Rev. 37 pp. 1380, 1553 (1931)
T. LEVI-CIVITA	The Absolute Differential Calculus (Blackie & Son Ltd.) London (1947).

W.H. MCCREA — Proc. Roy. Irish Ac. A45, 66 (1939)

K. NIKOLSKY — Zeits. f. Phys. 62, 677 (1930)

L. PAGE — Phys. Rev. 49, 254 (1936)

W. PAULI — Ann. Inst. H. Poincare, IV, 131. id, VI, fasc. 2, p. 109 (1936)

G. PETIAU — Journ. de Math. vol. 25, fasc. 4 (1946)

id. vol. 26, fasc. 1 (1947)

Journ. de Phys. Rad. VIII, 10, 265 (194()

M.S. PLESSET — Phys. Rev. 41, 278 (1932)

B. PODOLSKY — Phys. Rev. 37, 1398 (1931)

ROBERTSON — Phys. Rev. 49, 755 (1936)

H.S. RUSE — Trans. R.S. Edinburgh 57, 97 (1937)

F. SAUTER — Zeits. f. Phys. 69, 742 (1931)

id. 73, 547 (1931)

W. SCHERRER — Comm. Math. Helv. 7, 141 (1935)

E. SCHRODINGER — Sitz. Preuss. Akad. 105 (1932)

Proc. Roy. Irish Ac. A 46, 25 (1940)

J. SERPE — Phys. Rev. 76, 1538 (1949)

L. SILBERSTEIN — Phil. Mag. 23, 730 (1912)

id. 25, 135 (1913)

N.D. SINGUPTA	Bull. Calcutta Math. Soc. 39, 147 (1947)
A. SOMMERFELD	Sitz. Akad. Wiss. Wien II a. 145, 639 (1936)
N. SYMONDS	Proc. R. Irish Ac. 53A7, 115 (1950)
A.H. TAUB	Phys. Rev. 51, 512 (1937)
	Ann. of Math. 40, 937 (1939)
	Rev. Mod. Phys. 21, 388 (1949)
H. TETRODE	Zeits. f. Phys. 49, 861 (1928)
	id. 50, 336 (1928)
D.M. VOLKOV	Zeits. f. Phys. 94, 25 (1935)
A.G.D. WATSON	Proc. Cambridge Phil. Soc. 43, 491 (1947)
P. WEISS	Proc. R. Irish Ac. 46A12, 129 (1941)
R. WEITZENBÖCK	Sitz. Preuss. Akad., p. 466 (1929)
H. WEYL	Zeits. f. Phys. 56, 330 (1929)
	id. 75, 261 (1932)
E.T. WHITTAKER	Proc. Roy. Soc. 158A, 38 (1938)
E.T. WHITTAKER & G.N. WATSON	Modern Analysis 4th ed., Cambridge (1946)
R. ZAYCOFF	Zeit. f. Phys. 56, pp. 717, 862 (1929)

Reprinted from THE PHYSICAL REVIEW, Vol. 77, No. 6, 844–845, March 15, 1950
Printed in U. S. A.

On Two-Component Wave Equations

F. GÜRSEY
Imperial College, London, England
January 27, 1950

IN two recent letters Jehle[1] and Kilmister[2] have drawn attention to two-component wave equations. The object of this note is to show that such equations can be regarded as degenerate cases of the general wave equation. Jehle's field free equation is equivalent to Conway's[3] form of Dirac's equation when the wave quaternion reduces to its real part, i.e., when it is self-charge conjugate. Hence Jehle's field does not represent an electromagnetic interaction, but, as Serpe[4] has shown corresponds to a pseudo-vector interaction. The equation proposed by Kilmister can be derived from a different quaternion formulation of the wave equation due to Watson[5] when the wave function is invariant under a time reflection. Thus Kilmister's equation has solutions depending only on the space coordinates and it is equivalent to two equations of Jehle's type which differ from each other by the sign of their time coordinates.

Dirac's equation can be written in the form

$$\beta^\nu\partial_\nu\Psi=\mu\Psi, \quad (\beta^\lambda\beta^\nu+\beta^\nu\beta^\lambda=-2g^{\lambda\nu}), \tag{1}$$

where $\partial_\nu=\partial/\partial x^\nu$, $(\nu=0, 1, 2, 3)$ and $x^0=ct$. If Ψ is taken as a complex quaternion, one form of Conway's equation is obtained by replacing β^ν by the linear functions

$$\beta^0\Psi=\Psi f^2, \quad \beta^n\Psi=f^n\Psi f^3, \quad (n=1, 2, 3), \tag{2}$$

where f^n is the nth quaternion unit. As such linear quaternion functions can be represented by 4×4 real matrices and the general equation can be obtained by introducing the field A_ν through the substitution $\hbar\partial_\nu\rightarrow\hbar\partial_\nu+ieA_\nu$, the complex conjugate of Ψ is also its charge conjugate. Hence the self-conjugate solutions of (1) satisfy the real quaternion equation

$$\partial_0\Phi f^2+f^n\partial_n\Phi f^3=\mu\Phi, \tag{3}$$

where $\Phi=\phi_0+f^n\phi_n$ is a real quaternion. Therefore we can rewrite (3) as a complex 2×2 matrix equation by taking

$$f^1=\begin{bmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{bmatrix}, \quad f^2=\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad f^3=\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Φ being now represented by a complex 2×2 matrix we have

$$\Phi^*=-f^2\Phi f^2, \tag{4}$$

where Φ^* denotes the complex conjugate of the matrix Φ. Hence, operating with $-f^2(\ \ )f^2$ on (3) we get

$$f^2\partial_0\Phi-f^3\partial_1\Phi f^1-\partial_2\Phi f^1-f^1\partial_3\Phi f^1=\mu\Phi^*. \tag{5}$$

If γ^ν denotes the matrix operating on the first column ϕ of Φ and corresponds to the linear quaternion function associated with ∂_ν in (5), we can replace (5) by the equivalent equation

$$\gamma^\nu\partial_\nu\phi=\mu\phi^*.$$

As $\gamma^\nu\phi$ corresponds to $(\beta^\nu\Phi)^*$ in the 2×2 representation it follows from (1) that the matrices γ^ν satisfy Jehle's commutation relations

$$\gamma^{*\lambda}\gamma^\nu+\gamma^{*\nu}\gamma^\lambda=-2g^{\lambda\nu}.$$

Further, under a time reflection $x_0\rightarrow-x_0$ we have $\Phi\rightarrow\Phi f^1$, hence $\phi\rightarrow\gamma^2\phi$.

Kilmister's equation reads

$$(i\partial_0+f^n\partial_n)\Phi=\mu f^2\Phi^*,$$

where Φ again is a real quaternion in its 2×2 complex matrix form. By use of Eq. (4) we can write

$$(i\partial_0+f^n\partial_n)\Phi=\mu\Phi f^2. \tag{6}$$

Operating by $-f^2(\ \ )f^2$ on (6) then taking the complex conjugate of both sides, we also get

$$(-i\partial_0+f^n\partial_n)\Phi=\mu\Phi f^2.$$

Hence $\partial_0\Phi$ vanishes. The two columns of (6) equated separately give rise to a pair of equations of Jehle's type differing by the sign of their first terms only. Equation (6) is related to Watson's form of Dirac's equation which can be put in the form

$$(i\partial_0+f^n\partial_n)\Psi=\mu\Psi^*f^2$$

where a 4×4 real representation is used for each f^n. This corresponds to the following "realization" of the operators β by linear quaternion functions

$$\beta^0\Psi=i\Psi^*f^2, \quad \beta^n\Psi=-f^n\Psi^*f^2.$$

In this representation Ψ changes into Ψ^* under a time reflection. Hence the solutions left invariant under $x_0\rightarrow-x_0$ are given by Kilmister's Eq. (6).

[1] H. Jehle, Phys. Rev. **75**, 1609 (1949).
[2] C. W. Kilmister, Phys. Rev. **76**, 568 (1949).
[3] A. W. Conway, Proc. Roy. Soc. (A) **162**, 147 (1937).
[4] J. Serpe, Phys. Rev. **76**, 1538 (1949).
[5] A. G. D. Watson, Proc. Camb. Phil. Soc. **43**, 491 (1947).

Boğaziçi Üniversitesi
Arşiv ve Dokümantasyon Merkezi
Kişisel Arşivlerle İstanbul'da Bilim, Kültür ve Eğitim Tarihi

Feza Gürsey Arşivi



FGASCI0400301